

User's Guide

**SCX-340x/340xW Series
SCX-340xF/340xFW Series
SCX-340xFH/340xHW Series**

BASIC

This guide provides information concerning installation, basic operation and troubleshooting on windows.

ADVANCED

This guide provides information about installation, advanced configuration, operation and troubleshooting on various OS environments.

Some features may not be available depending on models or countries.

1. Introduction

| | |
|--------------------------------------|----|
| Key benefits | 5 |
| Features by models | 7 |
| Useful to know | 13 |
| About this user's guide | 14 |
| Safety information | 15 |
| Machine overview | 20 |
| Control panel overview | 24 |
| Turning on the machine | 29 |
| Installing the driver locally | 30 |
| Reinstalling the driver | 31 |

2. Menu Overview and Basic Setup

| | |
|---------------------------------|----|
| Menu overview | 33 |
| Machine's basic settings | 39 |
| Media and tray | 41 |
| Basic printing | 53 |
| Basic copying | 59 |
| Basic scanning | 64 |
| Basic faxing | 65 |

3. Maintenance

| | |
|---|----|
| Ordering supplies and accessories | 70 |
| Available supplies | 71 |
| Available maintenance parts | 72 |
| Storing the toner cartridge | 73 |
| Redistributing toner | 75 |
| Replacing the toner cartridge | 77 |
| Monitoring the supplies life | 79 |
| Setting the toner low alert | 80 |
| Cleaning the machine | 81 |
| Tips for moving & storing your machine | 87 |

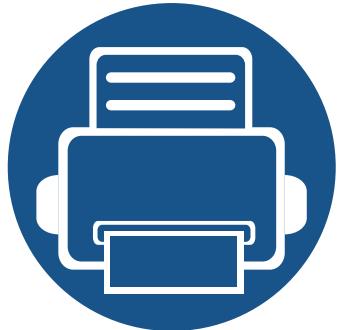
4. Troubleshooting

| | |
|--|-----|
| Tips for avoiding paper jams | 89 |
| Clearing original document jams | 90 |
| Clearing paper jams | 95 |
| Understanding the status LED | 99 |
| Understanding display messages | 101 |



5. Appendix

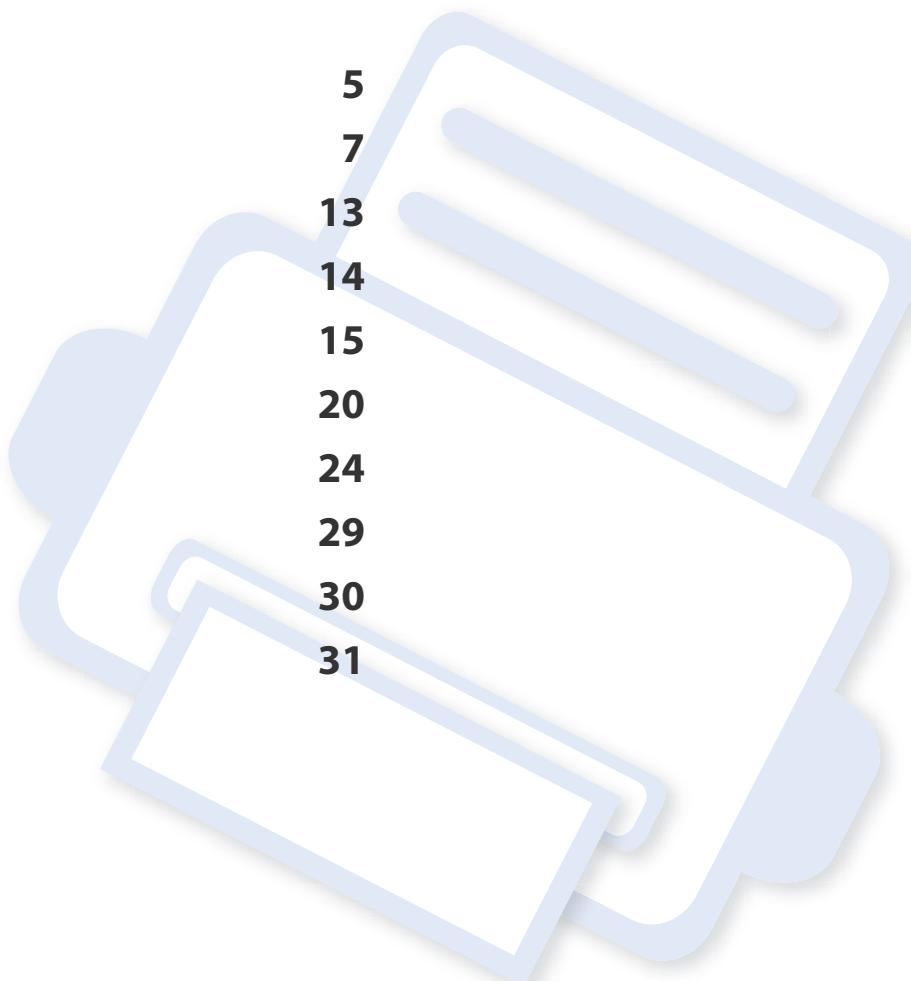
| | |
|-------------------------------|-----|
| Specifications | 107 |
| Regulatory information | 116 |
| Copyright | 129 |



1. Introduction

This chapter provides information you need to know before using the machine.

- **Key benefits**
- **Features by models**
- **Useful to know**
- **About this user's guide**
- **Safety information**
- **Machine overview**
- **Control panel overview**
- **Turning on the machine**
- **Installing the driver locally**
- **Reinstalling the driver**



Key benefits

Environmentally friendly



- To save toner and paper, this machine supports Eco feature (see "Eco printing" on page 57).
- To save paper, you can print multiple pages on one single sheet of paper (see "Using advanced print features" on page 229).
- To save paper, you can print on both sides of the paper (double-sided printing) (Manual) (see "Using advanced print features" on page 229).
- To save electricity, this machine automatically conserves electricity by substantially reducing power consumption when not in use.

Fast high resolution printing



- You can print with a resolution of up to 1,200 x 1,200 dpi effective output.
- Fast, on-demand printing.
 - For single-side printing, 20 ppm (A4) or 21 ppm (Letter).

Convenience



- Easy Capture Manager allows you to easily edit and print whatever you captured using the Print Screen key on the keyboard (see "Easy Capture Manager" on page 268).
- Samsung Easy Printer Manager and Printing Status (or Smart Panel) is a program that monitors and informs you of the machine's status and allows you to customize the machine's settings (see "Using Samsung Printer Status" on page 277 or "Using Smart Panel" on page 279).
- AnyWeb Print helps you screen-capture, preview, scrap, and print the screen of Windows Internet Explorer more easily, than when you use the ordinary program (see "Samsung AnyWeb Print" on page 269).
- Smart Update allows you to check for the latest software and install the latest version during the printer driver installation process. This is available only for Windows.
- If you have Internet access, you can get help, support application, machine drivers, manuals, and order information from the Samsung website, www.samsung.com > find your product > Support or Downloads.

Key benefits

Wide range of functionality and application support



- Supports various paper sizes (see "Print media specifications" on page 109).
- Print watermark: You can customize your documents with words, such as "Confidential" (see "Using advanced print features" on page 229).
- Print posters: The text and pictures of each page of your document are magnified and printed across the multiple sheets of paper and can then be taped together to form a poster (see "Using advanced print features" on page 229).
- You can print in various operating systems (see "System requirements" on page 112).
- Your machine is equipped with a USB interface and/or a network interface.

- Using the USB cable or a network cable
 - You can connect and set various wireless network settings using a USB cable or a network cable.
- Using the Wi-Fi Direct
 - You can conveniently print from your mobile device using the Wi-Fi or Wi-Fi Direct feature.



See "Introducing wireless set up methods" on page 157.

Supports various wireless network setting method



- Using the WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup™) button
 - You can easily connect to a wireless network using the WPS button on the machine and the access point (a wireless router).

Features by models

Some features and optional goods may not be available depending on model or country.

Operating System

| Operating System | SCX-340x Series SCX-340xW Series | SCX-340xF Series SCX-340xFW Series SCX-340xHW Series SCX-340xFH Series |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| Windows | • | • |
| Macintosh | • | • |
| Linux | • | • |
| Unix | | |

(•: Included, Blank: Not available)

Software

| Software | SCX-340x Series SCX-340xW Series | SCX-340xF Series SCX-340xFW Series SCX-340xHW Series SCX-340xFH Series |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| SPL printer driver | • | • |
| PCL printer driver | | |

Features by models

| Software | | SCX-340x Series SCX-340xW Series | SCX-340xF Series SCX-340xFW Series SCX-340xHW Series SCX-340xFH Series |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| PS printer driver | | | |
| XPS printer driver^a | | • | • |
| Direct Printing Utility | | | |
| Samsung Easy Printer Manager | Scan to PC settings | • | • |
| | Fax to PC settings | | • |
| | Device Settings | • | • |
| Samsung Printer Status | | • | • |
| Smart Panel | | • | • |
| AnyWeb Print | | • | • |
| SyncThru™ Web Service | | • (SCX-340xW Series only) | • (SCX-340xFW/ SCX-340xHW Series only) |
| SyncThru Admin Web Service | | • (SCX-340xW Series only) | • (SCX-340xFW/ SCX-340xHW Series only) |
| Easy Eco Driver | | • | • |
| Fax | Samsung Network PC Fax | | • |

Features by models

| Software | | SCX-340x Series | SCX-340xF Series |
|----------|-------------------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| | | SCX-340xW Series | SCX-340xFW Series |
| | | | SCX-340xHW Series |
| Scan | Twain scan driver | • | • |
| | WIA scan driver | • | • |
| | Samsung Scan Assistant | • | • |
| | SmarThru 4 | | |
| | SmarThru Office | • | • |

a. For XPS driver, it is only supported for Windows through the Samsung website (www.samsung.com)

(•: Included, Blank: Not available)

Features by models

Variety feature

| Features | SCX-340x Series SCX-340xW Series | SCX-340xF Series SCX-340xFW Series SCX-340xHW Series SCX-340xFH Series |
|---|-------------------------------------|---|
| Hi-Speed USB 2.0 | • | • |
| Network Interface Ethernet 10/100 Base TX wired LAN | | • (SCX-340xFW/SCX340xHW Series only) |
| Network Interface 802.11b/g/n wireless LAN^a | • (SCX-340xW Series only) | • (SCX-340xFW/SCX340xHW Series only) |
| Eco printing (Control panel) | • | • |
| Duplex (2-sided) printing (Manual)^b | • | • |
| USB memory interface | | |
| Memory module | | |
| Mass Storage Device (HDD) | | |
| Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF) | | |
| Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) | | • |
| Handset | | • (SCX-340xFH/ SCX-340xHW Series only) |

Features by models

| Features | | SCX-340x Series SCX-340xW Series | SCX-340xF Series SCX-340xFW Series SCX-340xHW Series SCX-340xFH Series |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| Fax | Multi-send | | • |
| | Delay send | | • |
| | Priority send | | • |
| | Duplex send | | |
| | Secure receive | | • |
| | Duplex print | | |
| | Send/ Receive forward - fax | | • |
| | Send/ Receive forward - email | | |
| | Send/ Receive forward - server | | |
| Scan | Scanning to email | | |
| | Scanning to SMB server | | |
| | Scanning to FTP server | | |
| | Duplex scan | • | |
| | Scan to PC | • | • |

Features by models

| | Features | SCX-340x Series SCX-340xW Series | SCX-340xF Series SCX-340xFW Series SCX-340xHW Series SCX-340xFH Series |
|-------------|------------------------------------|---|---|
| Copy | ID card copying | • | • |
| | Reduced or enlarged copying | | • |
| | Collation | | • |
| | Poster | | • |
| | Clone | | • |
| | Book | | |
| | 2-up/4-up | | • |
| | Adjust background | • | • |
| | Margin shift | | |
| | Edge erase | | |
| | Gray enhance | | |
| | Duplex copy | | |

- a. Depending on your country, wireless LAN card may not be available. For some counties, only 802.11 b/g can be applied. Contact your local Samsung dealer or the retailer where you bought your machine.
 b. Windows only.

(•: Included, Blank: Not available)

Useful to know



The machine does not print.

- Open the print queue list and remove the document from the list (see "Canceling a print job" on page 54).
- Remove the driver and install it again (see "Installing the driver locally" on page 30).
- Select your machine as your default machine in your Windows (see "Setting your machine as a default machine" on page 228).



Where can I purchase accessories or supplies?

- Inquire at a Samsung distributor or your retailer.
- Visit www.samsung.com/supplies. Select your country/region to view product service information.



The status LED flashes or remains constantly on.

- Turn the product off and on again.
- Check the meanings of LED indications in this manual and troubleshoot accordingly (see "Understanding the status LED" on page 99).



A paper jam has occurred.

- Open and close the scan unit (see "Front view" on page 21).
- Check the instructions on removing jammed paper in this manual and troubleshoot accordingly (see "Clearing paper jams" on page 95).



Printouts are blurry.

- The toner level might be low or uneven. Shake the toner cartridge (see "Redistributing toner" on page 75).
- Try a different print resolution setting (see "Opening printing preferences" on page 55).
- Replace the toner cartridge (see "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 77).



Where can I download the machine's driver?

- You can get help, support application, machine drivers, manuals, and order information from the Samsung website, www.samsung.com > find your product > Support or Downloads.

About this user's guide

This user's guide provides information for your basic understanding of the machine as well as detailed steps to explain machine usage.

- Read the safety information before using the machine.
- If you have a problem using the machine, refer to the troubleshooting chapter.
- Terms used in this user's guide are explained in the glossary chapter.
- All illustrations in this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or model you purchased.
- The screenshots in this administrator's guide may differ from your machine depending on the machine's firmware/driver version.
- The procedures in this user's guide are mainly based on Windows 7.

General icons

| Icon | Text | Description |
|---|----------------|--|
|  | Caution | Gives users information to protect the machine from possible mechanical damage or malfunction. |
|  | Note | Provides additional information or detailed specification of the machine function and feature. |

Conventions

Some terms in this guide are used interchangeably, as below:

- Document is synonymous with original.
- Paper is synonymous with media, or print media.
- Machine refers to printer or MFP.

Safety information

These warnings and precautions are included to prevent injury to you and others, and to prevent any potential damage to your machine. Be sure to read and understand all of these instructions before using the machine. After reading this section, keep it in a safe place for future reference.

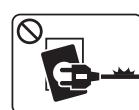
Important safety symbols

Explanation of all icons and signs used in this chapter

| | | |
|--|----------------|--|
| | Warning | Hazards or unsafe practices that may result in severe personal injury or death. |
| | Caution | Hazards or unsafe practices that may result in minor personal injury or property damage. |
| | | Do not attempt. |

Operating environment

! Warning



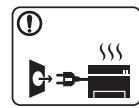
Do not use if the power cord is damaged or if the electrical outlet is not grounded.

This could result in electric shock or fire.



Do not place anything on top of the machine (water, small metal or heavy objects, candles, lit cigarettes, etc.).

This could result in electric shock or fire.



- If the machine gets overheated, it releases smoke, makes strange noises, or generates an odd odor, immediately turn off the power switch and unplug the machine.
- The user should be able to access the power outlet in case of emergencies that might require the user to pull the plug out.

This could result in electric shock or fire.



Do not bend, or place heavy objects on the power cord.

Stepping on or allowing the power cord to be crushed by a heavy object could result in electric shock or fire.



Do not remove the plug by pulling on the cord; do not handle the plug with wet hands.

This could result in electric shock or fire.

Safety information

Caution



During an electrical storm or for a period of non-operation, remove the power plug from the electrical outlet.

This could result in electric shock or fire.



Be careful, the paper output area is hot.

Burns could occur.



If the machine has been dropped, or if the cabinet appears damaged, unplug the machine from all interface connections and request assistance from qualified service personnel.

Otherwise, this could result in electric shock or fire.



If the machine does not operate properly after these instructions have been followed, unplug the machine from all interface connections and request assistance from qualified service personnel.

Otherwise, this could result in electric shock or fire.



If the plug does not easily enter the electrical outlet, do not attempt to force it in.

Call an electrician to change the electrical outlet, or this could result in electric shock.



Do not allow pets to chew on the AC power, telephone or PC interface cords.

This could result in electric shock or fire and/or injury to your pet.

Operating method

Caution



Do not forcefully pull the paper out during printing.

It can cause damage to the machine.



Be careful not to put your hand between the machine and paper tray.

You may get injured.



Be care when replacing paper or removing jammed paper.

New paper has sharp edges and can cause painful cuts.



When printing large quantities, the bottom part of the paper output area may get hot. Do not allow children to touch.

Burns can occur.



When removing jammed paper, do not use tweezers or sharp metal objects.

It can damage the machine.



Do not allow too many papers to stack up in the paper output tray.

It can damage the machine.

Safety information



Do not block or push objects into the ventilation opening.

This could result in elevated component temperatures which can cause damage or fire.



Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.



This machine's power reception device is the power cord.

To switch off the power supply, remove the power cord from the electrical outlet.

Installation / Moving

! Warning



Do not place the machine in an area with dust, humidity, or water leaks.

This could result in electric shock or fire.



Caution



Before moving the machine, turn the power off and disconnect all cords. The information below are only suggestions based on the units weight.

If you have a medical condition that prevents you from lifting, do not lift the machine. Ask for help, and always use the appropriate amount of people to lift the device safely.

Then lift the machine:

- If the machine weighs under 20 kg (44.09 lbs), lift with 1 person.
- If the machine weighs 20 kg (44.09 lbs) - 40kg (88.18 lbs), lift with 2 people.
- If the machine weighs more than 40 kg (88.18 lbs), lift with 4 or more people.

The machine could fall, causing injury or machine damage.



Do not place the machine on an unstable surface.

The machine could fall, causing injury or machine damage.



Use only No.26 AWG^a or larger, telephone line cord, if necessary.

Otherwise, it can cause damage to the machine.



Make sure you plug the power cord into a grounded electrical outlet.

Otherwise, this could result in electric shock or fire.

Safety information



Use the power cord supplied with your machine for safe operation. If you are using a cord which is longer than 2 meters (6 feet) with a 110V machine, then the gauge should be 16 AWG or larger.

Otherwise, it can cause damage to the machine, and could result in electric shock or fire.



Do not put a cover over the machine or place it in an airtight location, such as a closet.

If the machine is not well-ventilated, this could result in fire.



Do not overload wall outlets and extension cords.

This can diminish performance, and could result in electric shock or fire.



The machine should be connected to the power level which is specified on the label.

If you are unsure and want to check the power level you are using, contact the electrical utility company.

a. AWG: American Wire Gauge

Maintenance / Checking



Caution



Unplug this product from the wall outlet before cleaning the inside of the machine. Do not clean the machine with benzene, paint thinner or alcohol; do not spray water directly into the machine.

This could result in electric shock or fire.



When you are working inside the machine replacing supplies or cleaning the inside, do not operate the machine.

You could get injured.



Keep cleaning supplies away from children.
Children could get hurt.



Do not disassemble, repair or rebuild the machine by yourself.
It can damage the machine. Call a certified technician when the machine needs repairing.



To clean and operate the machine, strictly follow the user's guide provided with the machine.
Otherwise, you could damage the machine.

Safety information



Keep the power cable and the contact surface of the plug clean from dust or water.
Otherwise, this could result in electric shock or fire.



- Do not remove any covers or guards that are fastened with screws.
- Fuser units should only be repaired by a certified service technician. Repair by non-certified technicians could result in fire or electric shock.
- The machine should only be repaired by a Samsung service technician.



When storing supplies such as toner cartridges, keep them away from children.

Toner dust can be dangerous if inhaled or ingested.



Using recycled supplies, such as toner, can cause damage to the machine.

In case of damage due to the use of recycled supplies, a service fee will be charged.



When toner gets on your clothing, do not use hot water to wash it.

Hot water sets toner into fabric. Use cold water.



When changing the toner cartridge or removing jammed paper, be careful not to let toner dust touch your body or clothes.

Toner dust can be dangerous if inhaled or ingested.

Supply usage

Caution



Do not disassemble the toner cartridge.
Toner dust can be dangerous if inhaled or ingested.



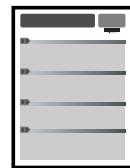
Do not burn any of the supplies such as toner cartridge or fuser unit.
This could cause an explosion or uncontrollable fire.

Machine overview

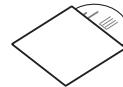
Accessories



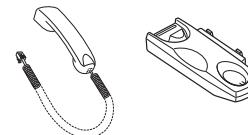
Power cord



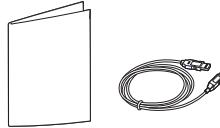
Quick installation guide



Software CD^a



Handset^b



Misc. accessories^c

a. The software CD contains the print drivers, user's guide, and software applications.

b. Handset model only (see "Features by models" on page 7).

c. Miscellaneous accessories included with your machine may vary by country of purchase and specific model.

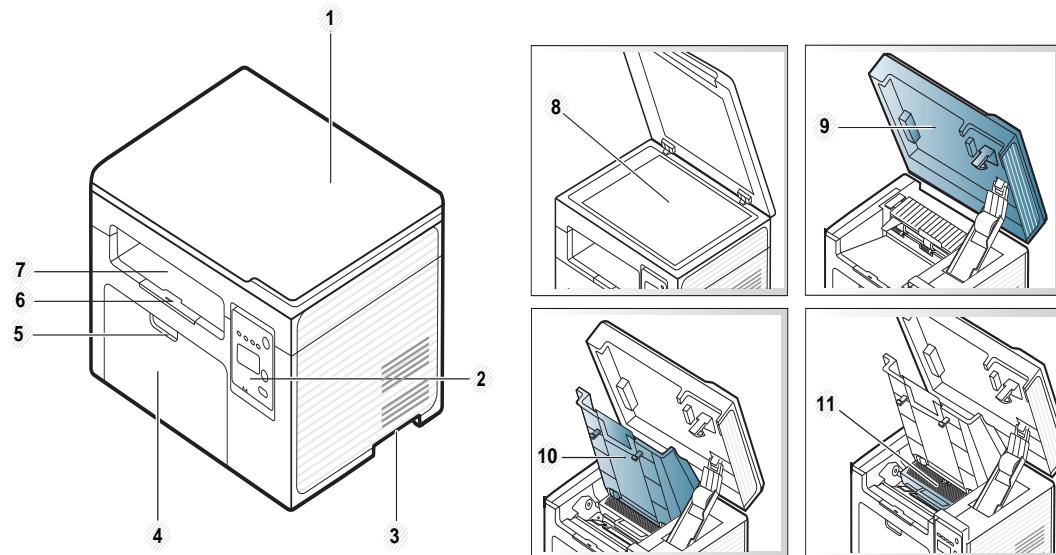
Machine overview

Front view



- This illustration may differ from your machine depending on your model. There are various types of machine.
- Some features and optional goods may not be available depending on model or country (see "Features by models" on page 7).

Type A



1 Scanner lid

7 Output tray

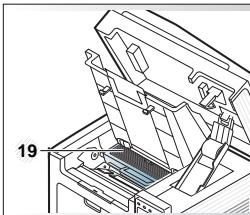
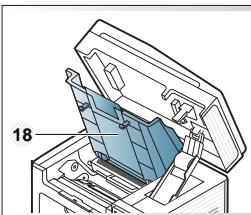
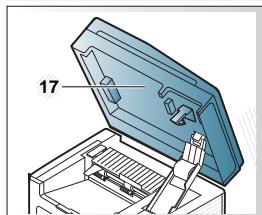
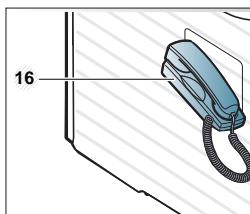
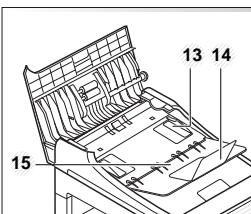
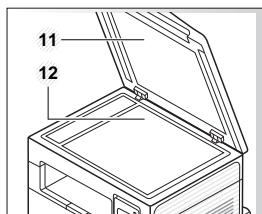
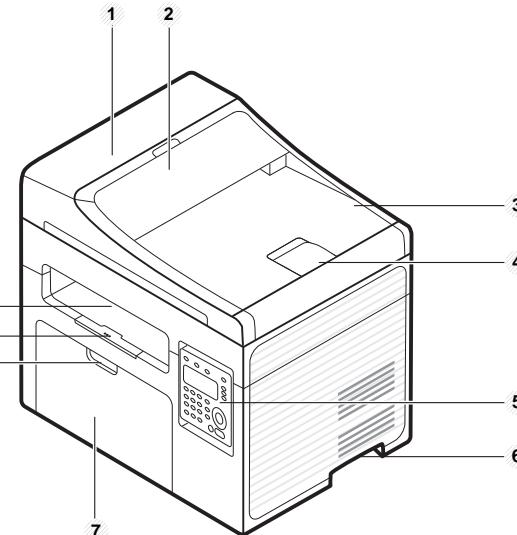
| | | | |
|---|----------------|----|-------------------------------------|
| 2 | Control panel | 8 | Scanner glass |
| 3 | Handle | 9 | Scan unit ^a ^b |
| 4 | Tray | 10 | Inner cover |
| 5 | Tray handle | 11 | Toner cartridge |
| 6 | Output support | | |

a. Close the scanner lid before opening the scan unit.

b. Be careful not to pinch your fingers.

Machine overview

Type B



1 Document feeder cover

11 Scanner lid

| | | | |
|----|--------------------------------|----|--|
| 2 | Document feeder guide cover | 12 | Scanner glass |
| 3 | Document feeder output tray | 13 | Paper width guide on a document feeder |
| 4 | Document feeder output support | 14 | Document feeder input support |
| 5 | Control panel | 15 | Document feeder input tray |
| 6 | Handle | 16 | Handset ^a |
| 7 | Tray | 17 | Scan unit ^{b c} |
| 8 | Tray handle | 18 | Inner cover |
| 9 | Output support | 19 | Toner cartridge |
| 10 | Output tray | | |

a. Handset model only (see "Features by models" on page 7).

b. Close the scanner lid before opening the scan unit.

c. Be careful not to pinch your fingers.

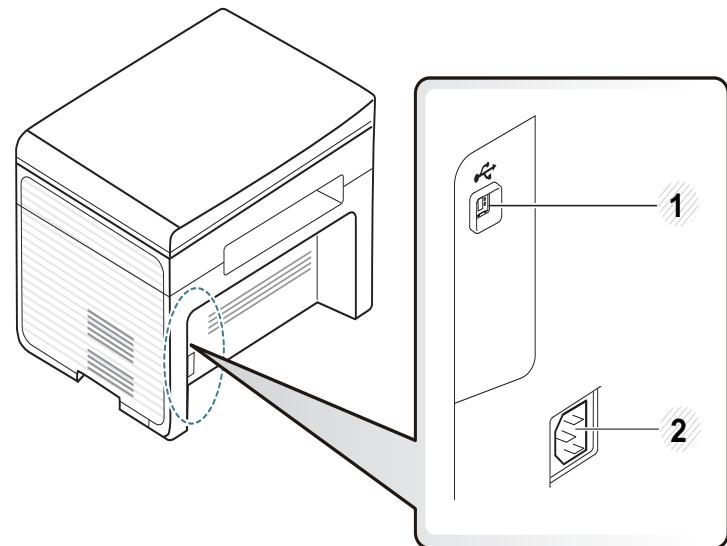
Machine overview

Rear view



- This illustration may differ from your machine depending on your model. There are various types of machine.
- Some features and optional goods may not be available depending on model or country (see "Features by models" on page 7).

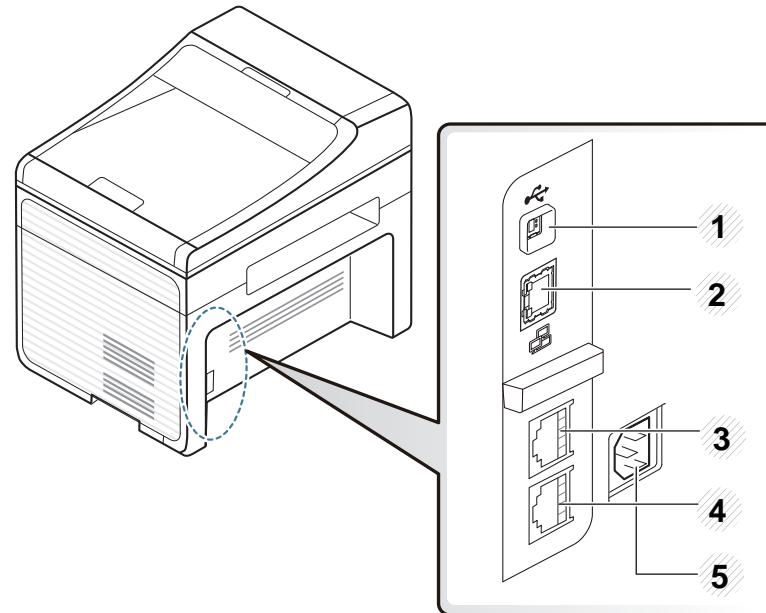
Type A



1 USB port

2 Power receptacle

Type B



1 USB port

2 Network port^a

3 Extension telephone socket (EXT.)

4 Telephone line socket (LINE)

5 Power receptacle

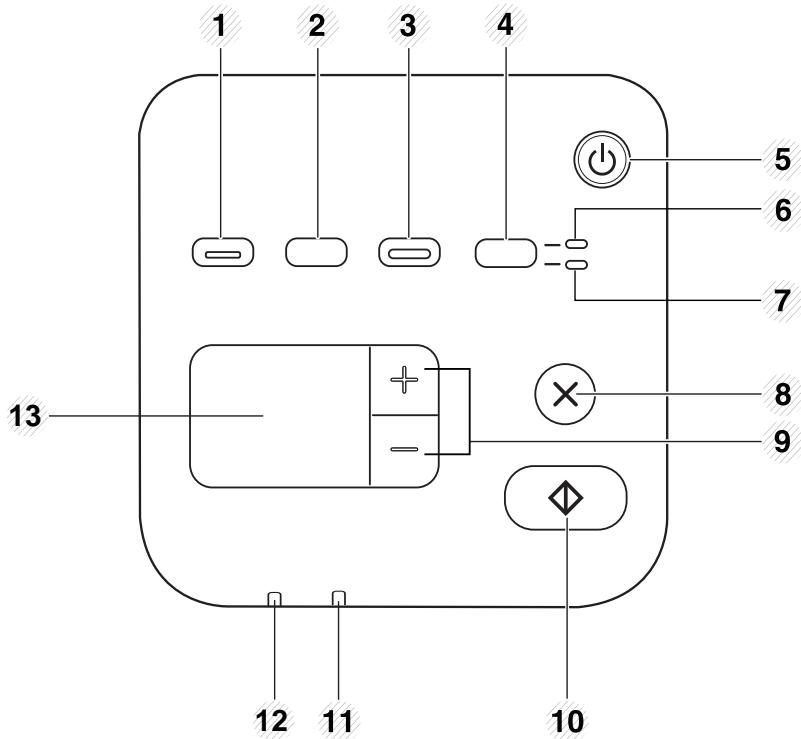
a. SCX-340xFW/ SCX-340xHW Series only.

Control panel overview



- This control panel may differ from your machine depending on its model. There are various types of control panels.
- Some features and optional goods may not be available depending on model or country (see "Features by models" on page 7).

Type A



| | | | |
|---|------------------|--|--|
| 1 | Eco | | Turn into eco mode to reduce toner consumption and paper usage when pc-printing only (see "Eco printing" on page 57). |
| 2 | WPS ^a | | Configures the wireless network connection easily without a computer (see "Using the WPS button" on page 159). |
| | Print Screen | | Press this button and the Status LED will start blinking. If you want to print only the active screen, release the button when the Status LED stops blinking. If you want to print the whole screen, release the button while it's blinking. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Print Screen can only be used in the Windows and Macintosh operating systems.• You can only use this function with USB-connected machine.• When printing the active window/whole monitor screen using the print screen button, the machine may use more toner depending on what is being printed.• You can only use this function if the machine's Samsung Easy Printer Manager program is installed. If you are a Macintosh OS user, you need to enable Screen Print Settings from the Samsung Easy Printer Manager to use the Print Screen feature. |
| 3 | Scan to | | Sends scanned data (see "Basic Scanning" on page 64). |

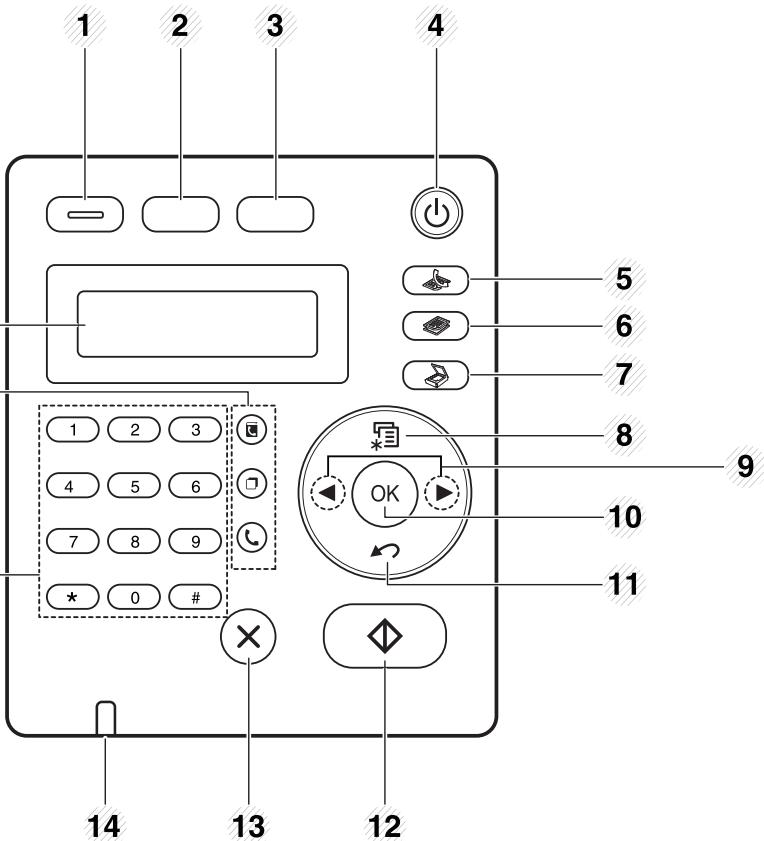
Control panel overview

| | | | |
|----|------------------------|---|--|
| 4 | ID Copy | Allows you to copy both sides of an ID card like a driver's license on a single side of paper (see "ID card copying" on page 61). | |
| 5 | Power |  Turns the power on or off, or wakes up the machine from the power save mode. If you need to turn the machine off, press this button for more than three seconds. | |
| 6 | Front LED | When the LED lights on, place the front side of an ID card facing down on the scanner glass (see "ID card copying" on page 61). | |
| 7 | Back LED | When the LED lights on, place the back side of an ID card facing down on the scanner glass (see "ID card copying" on page 61). | |
| 8 | Stop/ Clear |  Stops an operation at any time and there are more functions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cancels the current job. • Prints configuration report: Press and hold this button for about 2 seconds until the status LED blinks slowly, and release. • Supplied Information report: Press and hold this button for about 6 seconds and release. • Network configuration report^a: Press and hold this button for about 4 seconds until the status LED blinks fast, and release. | |
| 9 | +/- Buttons | Allows you to increase/decrease the number of pages to copy. You can determine the number of copies (up to 99 copies) to copy by pressing the +/- buttons. The default value is 1. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you press the +/- buttons, the number of copies will increase/decrease by one. • If you press and hold the +/- buttons, the number of copies will increase/decrease by ten. | |
| 10 | Start |  Starts a job. | |
| 11 | Status LED | Indicates the status of your machine (see "Understanding the status LED" on page 99). | |
| 12 | Toner LED | Shows the status of the toner (see "Understanding the status LED" on page 99). | |
| 13 | Display screen | Shows the number of pages you want to copy. | |

a. SCX-340xW Series only.

Control panel overview

Type B



| | | |
|---|------------|---|
| 1 | Eco | Turn into eco mode to reduce toner consumption and paper usage when pc-printing and copying only (see "Eco printing" on page 57). |
|---|------------|---|

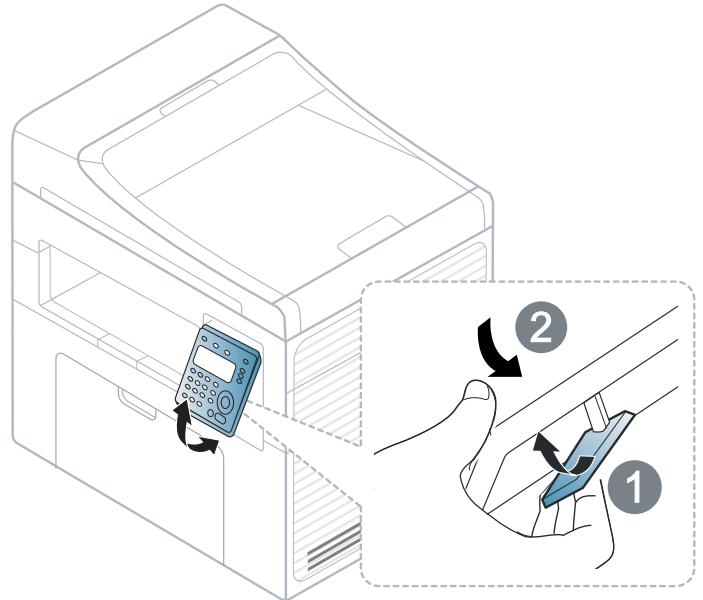
| | | |
|---|------------------------|--|
| 2 | WPS^a | Configures the wireless network connection easily without a computer (see "Using the WPS button" on page 159). |
| | Print Screen | Press this button and the display will Print Screen? on the display screen. If you want to print only the active screen, select the Active . If you want to print the whole screen, select Full . <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Print Screen can only be used in the Windows and Macintosh operating systems.• You can only use this function with USB-connected machine.• When printing the active window/whole monitor screen using the print screen button, the machine may use more toner depending on what is being printed.• You can only use this function if the machine's Samsung Easy Printer Manager program is installed. If you are a Macintosh OS user, you need to enable Screen Print Settings from the Samsung Easy Printer Manager to use the Print Screen feature. |
| 3 | ID Copy | Allows you to copy both sides of an ID card like a driver's license on a single side of paper (see "ID card copying" on page 61). |

Control panel overview

| | | | | | | | |
|----|---------------------------|---|--|--|-----------------------|--|---|
| 4 | Power |  | Turns the power on or off, or wakes up the machine from the power save mode. If you need to turn the machine off, press this button for more than three seconds. | 15 | Numeric keypad | Dials a number or enters alphanumeric characters (see "Keypad letters and numbers" on page 223). | |
| 5 | Fax |  | Switches to Fax mode. | 16 | On Hook Dial |  | When you press this button, you can hear a dial tone. Then enter a fax number. It is similar to making a call using speaker phone (see "Receiving manually in Tel mode" on page 261). |
| 6 | Copy |  | Switches to Copy mode. | 17 | Redial/ Pause |  | Redials the recently sent fax number or received caller ID in ready mode, or inserts a pause(-) into a fax number in edit mode (see "Redialing the fax number" on page 254). |
| 7 | Scan |  | Switches to Scan mode. | 18 | Address Book |  | Allows you to store frequently used fax numbers or search for stored fax numbers (see "Storing email address" on page 221 or "Setting up the fax address book" on page 224). |
| 8 | Menu |  | Opens Menu mode and scrolls through the available menus (see "Menu overview" on page 33). | 19 | Display screen | Shows the current status and displays prompts during an operation. | |
| 9 | Left/ Right Arrows |  | Scrolls through the options available in the selected menu and increases or decreases values. | a. SCX-340xFW/ SCX-340xHW Series only. | | | |
| 10 | OK | | Confirms the selection on the screen. | | | | |
| 11 | Back |  | Sends you back to the upper menu level. | | | | |
| 12 | Start |  | Starts a job. | | | | |
| 13 | Stop/ Clear |  | Stops an operations at any time. | | | | |
| 14 | Status LED | | Indicates the status of your machine (see "Understanding the status LED" on page 99). | | | | |

Control panel overview

Adjusting the control panel

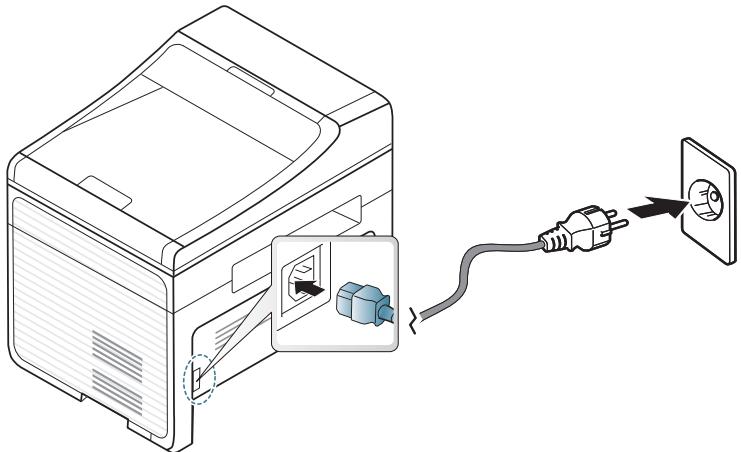


Illustrations on this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models. Check your machine type (see "Front view" on page 21).

Turning on the machine

1 Connect the machine to the electricity supply first.

Turn the switch on if the machine has a power switch.



Illustrations on this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models. Check your machine type (see "Front view" on page 21).

2 Power is turned on automatically.

For SCX-340x/SCX-340xW Series, press (Power) button on the control panel.



If you want to turn the power off, press and hold (Power) button for about 3 seconds.

Installing the driver locally

A locally connected machine is a machine directly attached to your computer using the cable. If your machine is attached to a network, skip the following steps below and go on to installing a network connected machine's driver (see "Installing driver over the network" on page 144).



- If you are a Macintosh or Linux operating systems user, refer to the "Installation for Macintosh" on page 134 or "Installation for Linux" on page 136.
- The installation window in this User's Guide may differ depending on the machine and interface in use.
- Selecting **Custom Installation** allows you to choose which programs to install.
- Only use a USB cable no longer than 3 meters (118 inches).

Windows

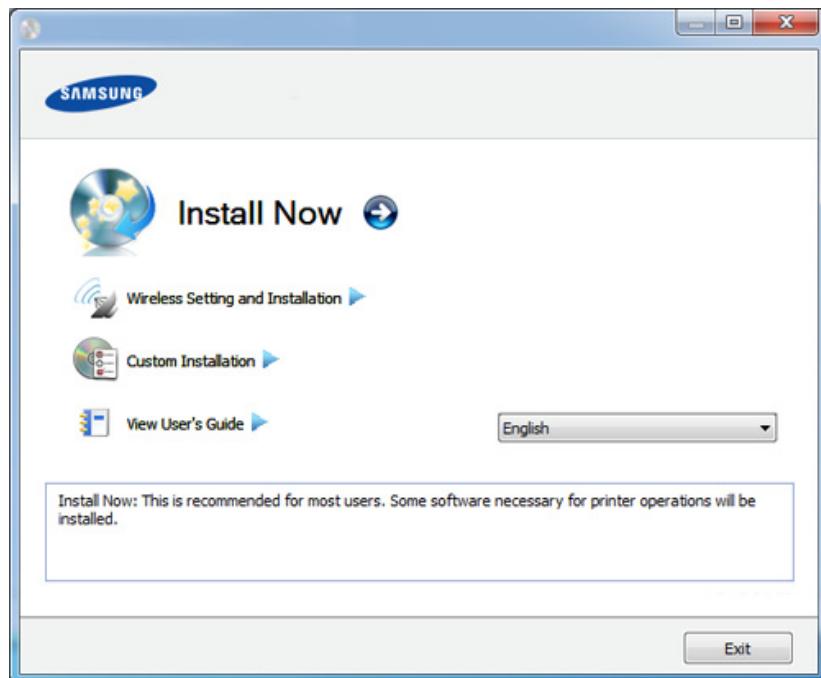
- 1 Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.



If the **"Found New Hardware Wizard"** appears during the installation procedure, click **Cancel** to close the window.

- 2 Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive. If the installation window does not appear, click **Start > All programs > Accessories > Run**.
X:\Setup.exe replacing "X" with the letter, which represents your CD-ROM drive and click **OK**.

- 3 Select **Install Now**.



- 4 Read the **License Agreement**, and select **I accept the terms of the License Agreement**. Then, click **Next**.
- 5 Follow the instructions in the installation window.

Reinstalling the driver

If the printer driver does not work properly, follow the steps below to reinstall the driver.

Windows

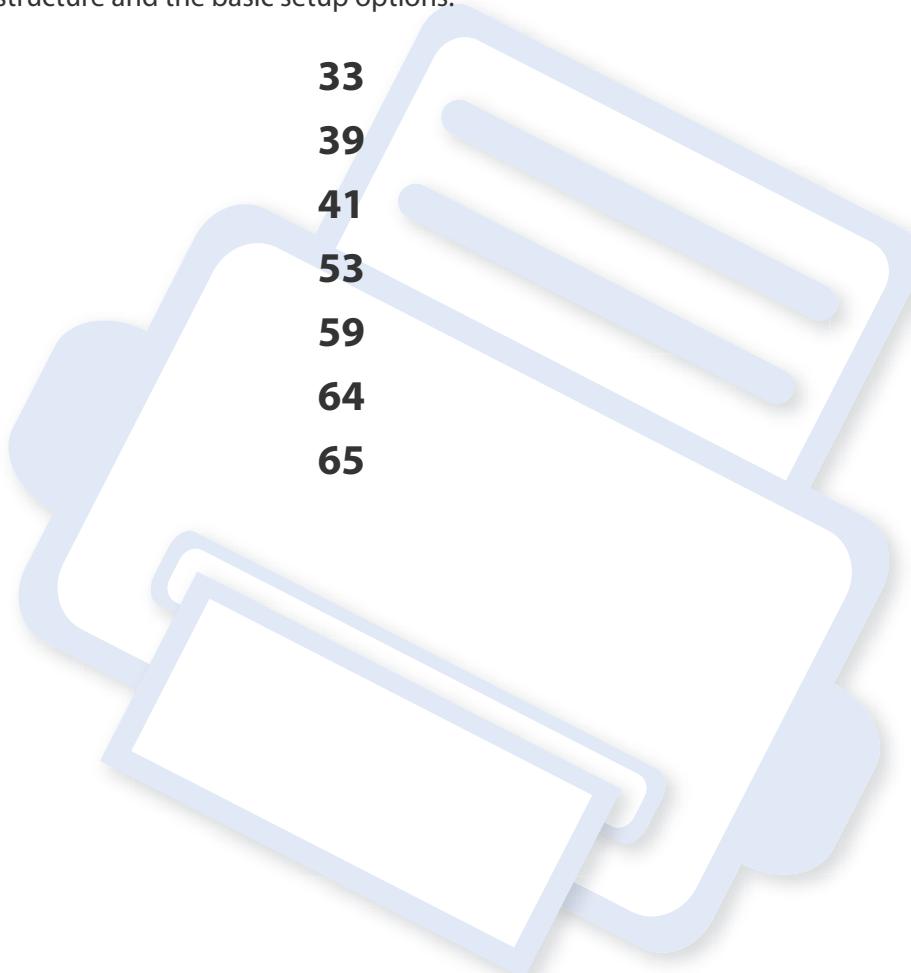
- 1** Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
- 2** From the **Start** menu, select **Programs** or **All Programs** > **Samsung Printers** > **your printer driver name** > **Uninstall**.
- 3** Follow the instructions in the installation window.
- 4** Insert the software CD into your CD-ROM drive and install the driver again (see "Installing the driver locally" on page 30).



2. Menu Overview and Basic Setup

This chapter provides information about the overall menu structure and the basic setup options.

- **Menu overview**
- **Machine's basic settings**
- **Media and tray**
- **Basic printing**
- **Basic copying**
- **Basic scanning**
- **Basic faxing**



Menu overview

The control panel provides access to various menus to set up the machine or use the machine's functions.



- This function is not supported for SCX-340x/SCX-340xW Series (see "Control panel overview" on page 24).
- Some menus may not appear on the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine.
- Some menu names may differ from your machine depending on its options or the models.
- The menus are described in the Advanced Guide (see "Useful Setting Menus" on page 189).

Accessing the menu

- 1 Select the Fax, Copy, or Scan button on the control panel depending on the feature to be used.
- 2 Select (Menu) until the menu you want appears on the bottom line of the display and press **OK**.
- 3 Press the arrows until the needed menu item appears and press **OK**.
- 4 If the setting item has sub menus, repeat step 3.
- 5 Press **OK** to save the selection.

- 6 Press (Stop/Clear) to return to the ready mode.

| Items | Options | |
|--------------------|---|---|
| Fax Feature | Darkness | Normal Dark+1 - Dark+5 Light+5 - Light+1 |
| Contrast | Normal Dark+1 - Dark+5 Light+5 - Light+1 | |
| Resolution | Standard Fine Super Fine Photo Fax Color Fax | |
| Scan Size | | |
| Multi Send | | |
| Delay Send | | |

Menu overview

| Items | Options | | Items | Options | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------|
| Fax Feature (Continue) | Priority Send | | Fax Setup (Continue) | Receiving | Receive Mode |
| | Forward | Fax | | | Ring To Answer |
| | | PC | | | Stamp RCV Name |
| | Secure Receive | Off | | | RCV Start Code |
| | | On | | | Auto Reduction |
| | | Print | | | Discard Size |
| | Add Page | | | | Junk Fax Setup |
| | Cancel Job | | | | DRPD Mode^a |
| Fax Setup | Sending | Redial Times | Change Default | Resolution | |
| | | Redial Term | | Darkness | |
| | | Prefix Dial | | Contrast | |
| | | ECM Mode | | Scan Size | |
| | | Send Report | Auto Report | On | |
| | | Image TCR | | Off | |
| | | Dial Mode^a | Manual TX/RX | On | |
| | | | | | Off |

Menu overview

| Items | Options | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|--|
| Copy Feature | Scan Size | |
| | Reduce/Enlarge | |
| | Darkness | Normal Dark+1- Dark+5 Light+5- Light+1 |

| Items | Options | |
|--|----------------------|---|
| Copy Feature (Continue) | Contrast | Normal Dark+1- Dark+5 Light+5- Light+1 |
| | Original Type | Text Text/Photo Photo |
| | Layout | Normal 2-Up 4-Up ID Copy Poster Copy Clone Copy |
| | Adjust Bkgd. | Off Auto Enhance Lev.1 Enhance Lev.2 Erase Lev.1- Erase Lev.4 |

Menu overview

| Items | Options | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|--|
| Copy Setup | Change Default | Scan Size Copies Copy Collation Reduce/Enlarge Darkness Contrast Original Type Adjust Bkgd. |
| | | System Setup Machine Setup Machine ID Fax Number Date & Time Clock Mode Language Power Save Wakeup Event System Timeout Altitude Adj. Auto Continue ^b Paper Mismatch Paper Substit. ^b Toner Save Eco Settings |
| | | Paper Setup Paper Size Paper Type Margin |

Menu overview

| Items | Options | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| System Setup (Continue) | Sound/ Volume | Key Sound |
| | | Alarm Sound |
| | | Speaker |
| | | Ringer |
| | Report | All Report |
| | | Configuration |
| | | Supplies Info. |
| | | Address Book |
| | | Fax Send |
| | | Fax Sent |
| | | Fax Received |
| | | Schedule Jobs |
| | | Junk Fax |
| | | Network Conf.^c |
| | | Usage Counter |
| | | Fax Options |
| | Maintenance | CLR Empty Msg.^d |
| | | Supplies Life |
| | | Serial No. |
| | | TonerLow Alert |

| Items | Options | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| System Setup (Continue) | Clear Setting | All Settings |
| System Setup (Continue) | Clear Setting | Fax Setup |
| | | Copy Setup |
| | | System Setup |
| Network^c | TCP/IP (IPv4) | DHCP |
| | | BOOTP |
| | | Static |
| | TCP/IP (IPv6) | IPv6 Activate |
| | | DCHPv6 Config |
| Ethernet Speed | Ethernet Speed | Automatic |
| | | 10Mbps Half |
| | | 10Mbps Full |
| | | 100Mbps Half |
| | | 100Mbps Full |

Menu overview

| Items | Options | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Network c (Continue) | Wireless | Wi-Fi ON/OFF |
| | | Wi-Fi Direct |
| | | WPS Setting |
| | | WLAN Setting |
| | | WLAN Default |
| | | WLAN Signal |
| | Clear Setting | |
| | Network Conf. | |

- a. This option may not be available depending on your country.
- b. This option only appears if **Paper Mismatch** is enabled.
- c. SCX-340xFW/ SCX-340xHW Series only.
- d. This option only appears when small amount of toner is left in the cartridge.

Machine's basic settings



If your machine has +/- buttons on the control panel, (see "Control panel overview" on page 24):

You can set the machine's settings by using the **Device Settings** in Samsung Easy Printer Manager program or **Machine** section in Printer Settings Utility program.

- For Windows and Macintosh users, see "Device Settings" on page 276.
- For Linux users, see "Using Smart Panel" on page 279.

After installation is complete, you may want to set the machine's default settings.

To change the machine's default settings, follow these steps:



It may be necessary to press **OK** to navigate to lower-level menus for some models.

- 1 Select (**Menu**) button on the control panel.
- 2 Press **System Setup > Machine Setup**.

3

Select the option you want, then press **OK**.

- **Language:** change the language that is displayed on the control panel.
- **Date & Time:** When you set the time and date, they are used in delay fax and delay print. They are printed on reports. If, however, they are not correct, you need to change it for the correct time being.



Enter the correct time and date using arrows or numeric keypad (see "Keypad letters and numbers" on page 223).

- Month = 01 to 12
- Day = 01 to 31
- Year = requires four digits
- Hour = 01 to 12
- Minute = 00 to 59

- **Clock Mode:** You can set your machine to display the current time using either a 12-hour or 24-hour format.
- **Toner Save:** Toner save mode allows your machine to use less toner on each page. Activating this mode extends the life of the toner cartridge beyond what one would experience in the normal mode, but it reduces print quality.



When PC-printing, you can also turn on or off toner save mode in the printer properties.

Machine's basic settings

- **Power Save:** When you are not using the machine for a while, use this feature to save power.
- See "Setting the paper size and type" on page 48.
- See "Setting up the fax address book" on page 224.



- When you press the power button, start printing, or a fax is received, the product will wake up from the power saving mode.
- Press (Menu) > **System Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Wakeup Event** > **Button Press** > **On** on the control panel. When you press any button except power button, the machine wake up from the power save mode.

- **Altitude Adjust:** Print quality is affected by atmospheric pressure, which atmospheric pressure is determined by the height of the machine above sea level. Before you set the altitude value, determine the altitude where you are (see "Altitude adjustment" on page 220).

4 Select the option you want, then press **OK**.

5 Press **OK** to save the selection.

6 Press (**Stop/Clear**) to return to ready mode.



Refer to below links to set other settings useful for using the machine.

- See "Entering various characters" on page 223.
- See "Keypad letters and numbers" on page 223.

Media and tray

This chapter provides information on how to load print media into your machine.



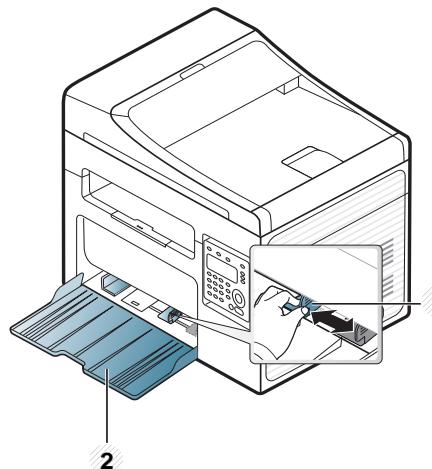
- Using print media that does not meet these specifications may cause problems or require repairs. Such repairs are not covered by Samsung's warranty or service agreements.
- Make sure not to use the inkjet photo paper with this machine. It could cause damage to the machine.
- Using inflammable print media can cause a fire.
- Use designated print media (see "Print media specifications" on page 109).



The use of inflammable media or foreign materials left in the printer may lead to overheating of the unit and, in rare cases may cause a fire.

Tray overview

To change the size, you need to adjust the paper guides.



1 Paper width guide

2 Tray



Illustrations on this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models. Check your machine type (see "Front view" on page 21).



If you do not adjust the guide, it may cause paper registration, image skew, or jamming of the paper.

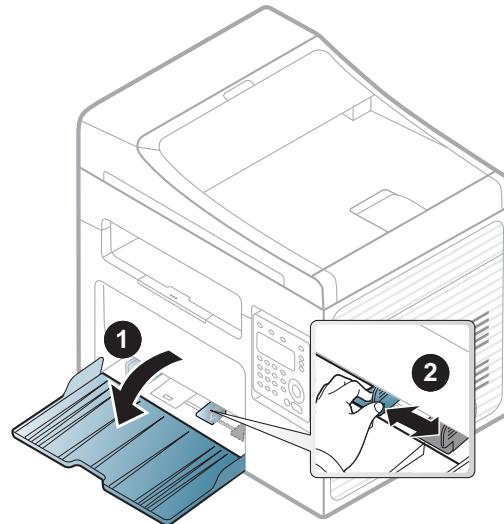
Media and tray

Loading paper in the tray

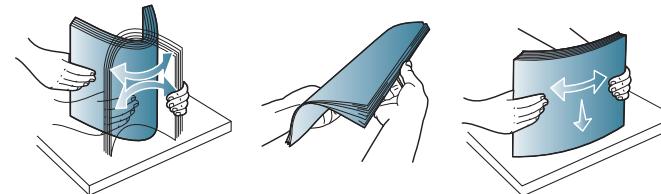


Illustrations on this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models. Check your machine type (see "Front view" on page 21).

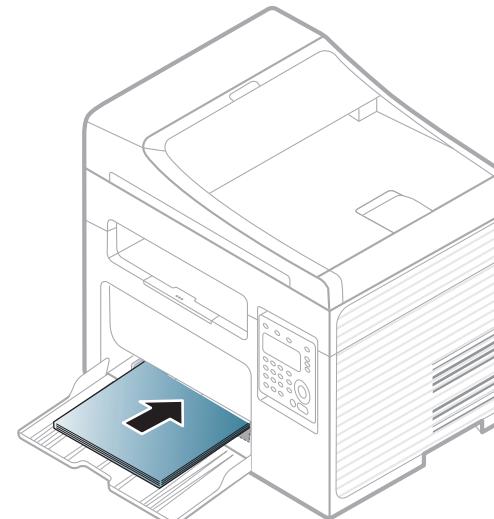
- 1 Open the tray. Then, adjust the tray size to the media size you are loading (see "Tray overview" on page 41).



- 2 Flex or fan the edge of the paper stack to separate the pages before loading papers.



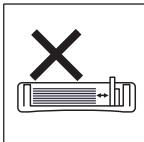
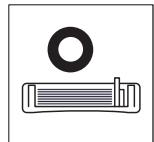
- 3 Place the paper with the side you want to print facing up.



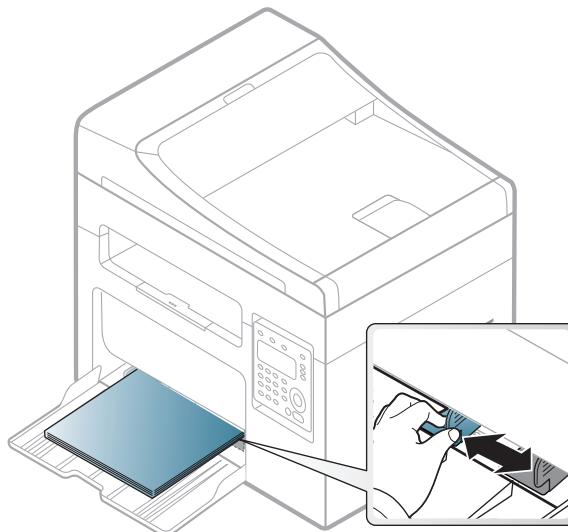
Media and tray



- Do not push the paper width guide too far causing the media to warp.
- Do not use a paper with a leading-edge curl, it may cause a paper jam or the paper can be wrinkled.
- If you do not adjust the paper width guide, it may cause paper jams.



4 Squeeze the paper width guide and slide it to the edge of the paper stack without causing it to bend.



5 When you print a document, set the paper type and size for the tray (see "Setting the paper size and type" on page 48).



The settings made from the machine driver override the settings on the control panel.

- a To print in application, open an application and start the print menu.
- b Open **Printing Preferences** (see "Opening printing preferences" on page 55).
- c Press the **Paper** tab in **Printing Preferences**, and select an appropriate paper type.
For example, if you want to use a label, set the paper type to **Label**.
- d Select **Auto Select** (or **Manual Feeder**) in paper source, then press **OK**.
- e Start printing in application.

Media and tray

Manual feeding in the tray

The tray can hold special sizes and types of print material, such as postcards, note cards, and envelopes (see "Print media specifications" on page 109).

To feed manually in the tray, click the below:

See "Loading paper in the tray" on page 42.



Tips on using the manual feeding in tray

- If you select **Paper > Source > Manual Feeder** from your printer driver, you need to press **OK** each time you print a page.
- Load only one type, size and weight of print media at time in the tray.
- To prevent paper jams, do not add paper while printing when there is still paper in the tray.
- Print media should be loaded face up with the top edge going into the tray first and be placed in the center of the tray.
- To ensure printing quality and to prevent paper jams, only load the available paper (see "Print media specifications" on page 109).
- Flatten any curl on postcards, envelopes, and labels before loading them into the tray.
- When printing on special media, you must follow the loading guidelines (see "Printing on special media" on page 44).

Printing on special media

The table below shows the special media usable in tray.

The media is also shown in the **Printing Preferences**. To get the highest printing quality, select the proper media type from the **Printing preferences** window > **Paper** tab > **Paper Type** (see "Opening printing preferences" on page 55).

For example, if you want to print on labels, select **Labels** for **Paper Type**.



- When using special media, we recommend you feed one sheet at a time (see "Print media specifications" on page 109).
- Illustrations on this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models. Check your machine type (see "Front view" on page 21).

To see for paper weights for each sheet, refer to "Print media specifications" on page 109.

| Types | Tray ^a |
|-------|-------------------|
| Plain | ● |
| Thick | ● |
| Thin | ● |

Media and tray

| Types | Tray ^a |
|------------|-------------------|
| Bond | • |
| Color | • |
| CardStock | • |
| Labels | • |
| Envelope | • |
| Preprinted | • |
| Cotton | • |
| Recycled | • |
| Archive | • |

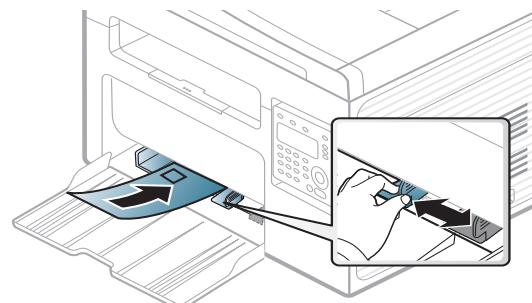
a. The paper types available manual feeding in tray.

(•: Included, Blank: Not available)

Envelope

Printing successfully on envelopes depends upon the quality of the envelopes.

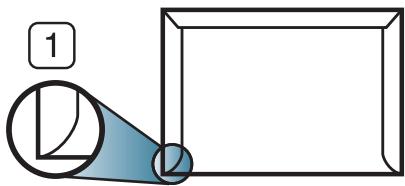
To print an envelope, place it as shown in the following figure.



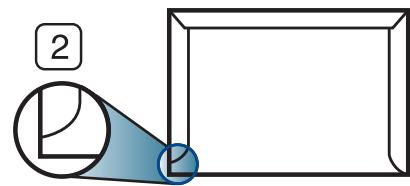
- When selecting envelopes, consider the following factors:
 - Weight:** should not exceed 90 g/m² otherwise; jams may occur.
 - Construction:** should lie flat with less than 6 mm curl and should not contain air.
 - Condition:** should not be wrinkled, nicked, nor damaged.
 - Temperature:** should resist the heat and pressure of the machine during operation.
- Use only well-constructed envelopes with sharp and well-creased folds.
- Do not use stamped envelopes.
- Do not use envelopes with clasps, snaps, windows, coated lining, self-adhesive seals, or other synthetic materials.
- Do not use damaged or poorly made envelopes.

Media and tray

- Be sure the seam at both ends of the envelope extends all the way to the corner of the envelope.



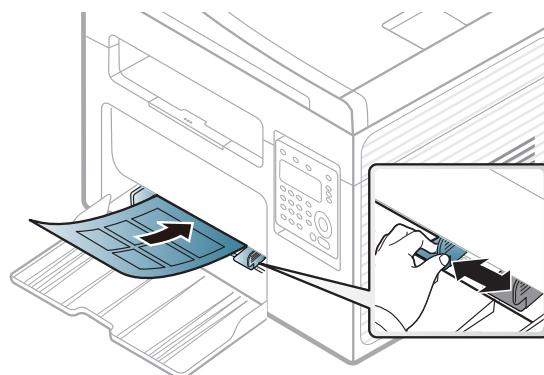
1 Acceptable
2 Unacceptable



- Envelopes with a peel-off adhesive strip or with more than one flap that folds over to seal must use adhesives compatible with the machine's fusing temperature for 0.1 second about 170°C (338 °F). The extra flaps and strips might cause wrinkling, creasing, or jams, and may even damage the fuser.
- For the best print quality, position margins no closer than 15 mm from the edges of the envelope.
- Avoid printing over the area where the envelope's seams meet.

Labels

To avoid damaging the machine, use only labels designed for use in laser printers.

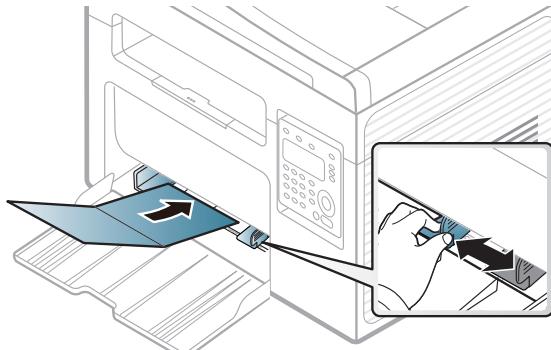


- When selecting labels, consider the following factors:
 - Adhesives:** Should be stable at your machine's fusing temperature about 170°C (338°F).
 - Arrangement:** Only use labels with no exposed backing between them. Labels can peel off sheets that have spaces between the labels, causing serious jams.
 - Curl:** Must lie flat with no more than 13 mm of curl in any direction.
 - Condition:** Do not use labels with wrinkles, bubbles, or other indications of separation.
- Make sure that there is no exposed adhesive material between labels. Exposed areas can cause labels to peel off during printing, which can cause paper jams. Exposed adhesive can also cause damage to machine components.

Media and tray

- Do not run a sheet of labels through the machine more than once. The adhesive backing is designed for only a single pass through the machine.
- Do not use labels that are separating from the backing sheet or are wrinkled, bubbled, or otherwise damaged.

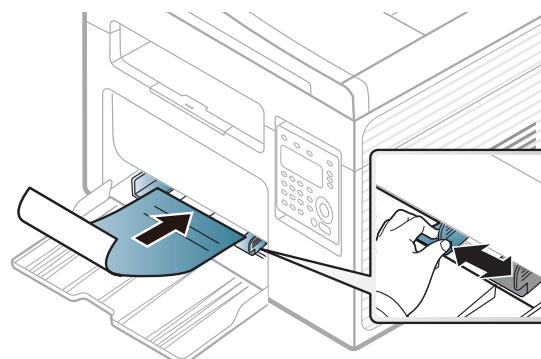
Card stock/ Custom-sized paper



- In the software application, set the margins to at least 6.4 mm (0.25 inches) away from the edges of the material.

Preprinted paper

When loading preprinted paper, the printed side should be facing up with an uncurled edge at the front. If you experience problems with paper feeding, turn the paper around. Note that print quality is not guaranteed.



- Must be printed with heat-resistant ink that will not melt, vaporize, or release hazardous emissions when subjected to the machine's fusing temperature for 0.1 second (about 170°C (338°F)).
- Preprinted paper ink must be non-flammable and should not adversely affect machine rollers.
- Before you load preprinted paper, verify that the ink on the paper is dry. During the fusing process, wet ink can come off preprinted paper, reducing print quality.

Media and tray

Setting the paper size and type

After loading paper in the paper tray, set the paper size and type using the control panel buttons.



If your machine has + / - buttons on the control panel (see "Control panel overview" on page 24):

You can set the machine's settings by using the **Device Settings** in Samsung Easy Printer Manager program or **Machine** section in Printer Settings Utility program.

- For Windows and Macintosh users, see "Device Settings" on page 276.
- For Linux users, see "Using Smart Panel" on page 279.



It may be necessary to press **OK** to navigate to lower-level menus for some models.

1 Select (**Menu**) button on the control panel.

2 Press **System Setup > Paper Setup > Paper Size or Paper Type**.

3 Select the tray and the option you want.

4 Press **OK** to save the selection.

5

Press (**Stop/Clear**) to return to ready mode.



- The settings set from the machine driver override the settings on the control panel.
 - a** To print from an application, open an application and start the print menu.
 - b** Open **Printing Preferences** (see "Opening printing preferences" on page 55).
 - c** Press the **Paper** tab and select an appropriate paper.
- If you want to use special-sized paper such as billing paper, select the **Paper** tab > **Size** > **Edit...** and set **Custom Paper Size Settings** in the **Printing Preferences** (see "Opening printing preferences" on page 55).

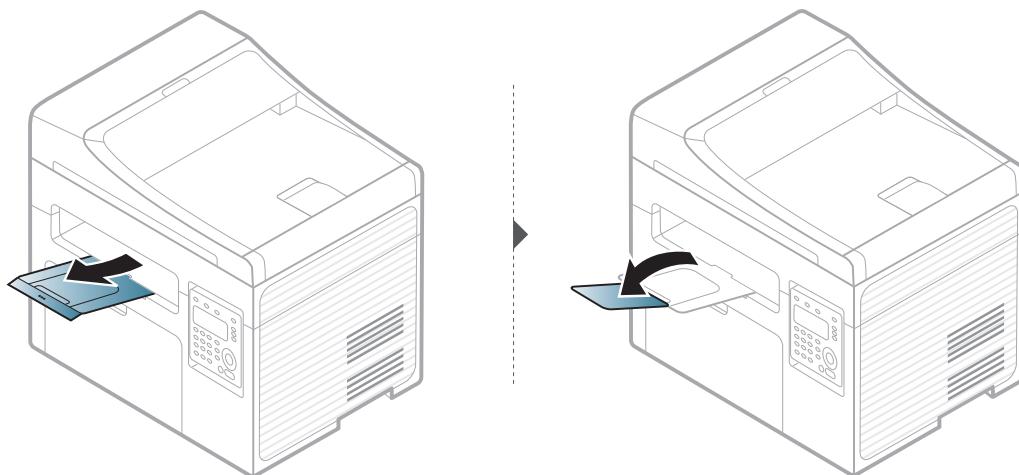
Media and tray

Using the output support



The surface of the output tray may become hot if you print a large number of pages at once. Make sure that you do not touch the surface, and do not allow children near it.

The printed pages stack on the output support, and the output support will help the printed pages to align. The printer sends output to the output tray by default.



Illustrations on this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models. Check your machine type (see "Front view" on page 21).

Preparing originals

- Do not load paper smaller than 142 x 148 mm (5.6 x 5.8 inches) or larger than 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches).
- Do not attempt to load the following types of paper, in order to prevent paper jam, low print quality and machine damage.
 - Carbon-paper or carbon-backed paper
 - Coated paper
 - Onion skin or thin paper
 - Wrinkled or creased paper
 - Curled or rolled paper
 - Torn paper
- Remove all staples and paper clips before loading.
- Make sure any glue, ink, or correction fluid on the paper is completely dry before loading.
- Do not load originals that include different sizes or weights of paper.
- Do not load booklets, pamphlets, transparencies, or documents with other unusual characteristics.

Media and tray

Loading originals

You can use the scanner glass or the document feeder to load an original for copying, scanning, and sending a fax.

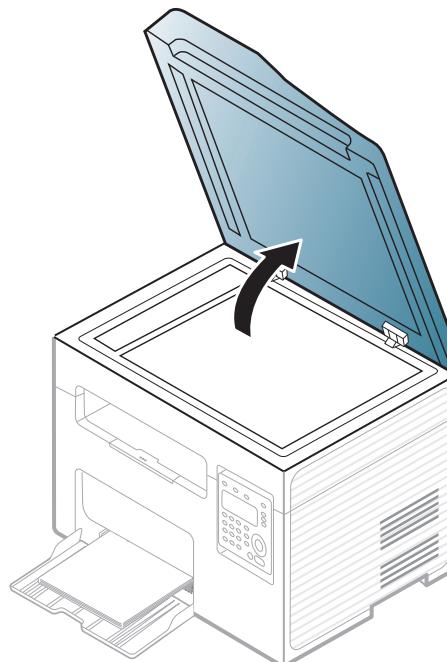


Illustrations on this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models. Check your machine type (see "Front view" on page 21).

On the scanner glass

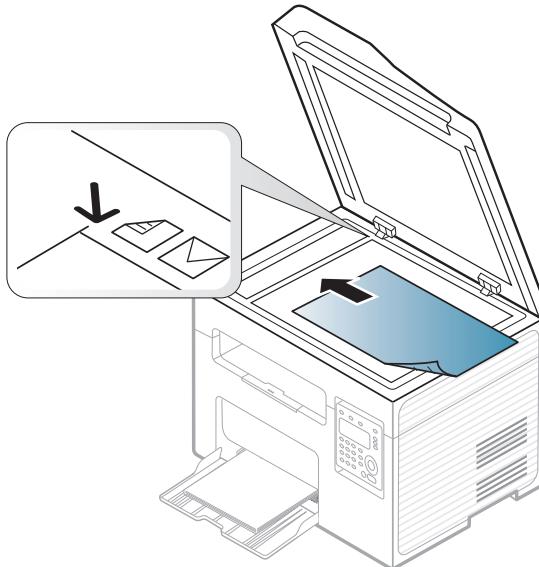
Using the scanner glass, you can copy or scan originals. You can get the best scan quality, especially for colored or gray-scaled images. Make sure that no originals are in the document feeder. If an original is detected in the document feeder, the machine gives it priority over the original on the scanner glass.

- 1 Lift and open the scanner lid.



Media and tray

- 2** Place the original face down on the scanner glass. Align it with the registration guide at the top left corner of the glass.



- 3** Close the scanner lid.

-  Leaving the scanner lid open while copying may affect copy quality and toner consumption.
- Dust on the scanner glass may cause black spots on the printout. Always keep it clean (see "Cleaning the machine" on page 81).
- If you are copying a page from a book or magazine, lift the scanner lid until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the lid. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start copying with the scanner lid open.

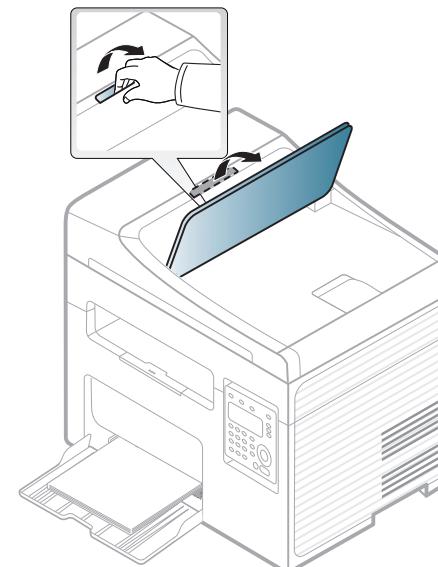


- Be careful not to break the scanner glass. You may get hurt.
- Do not put hands while closing the scanner lid. The scanner lid may fall on your hands and get hurt.
- Do not look the light from inside of the scanner while copying or scanning. It is harmful to eyes.

In the document feeder

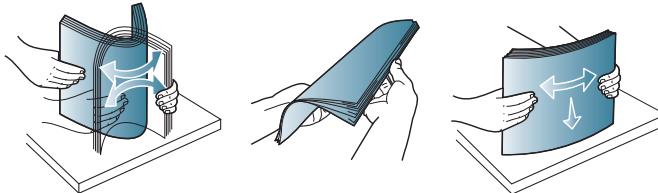
Using the document feeder, you can load up to 40 sheets of paper (80 g/m², 20 lbs bond) for one job.

- 1** Open the document feeder guide cover.

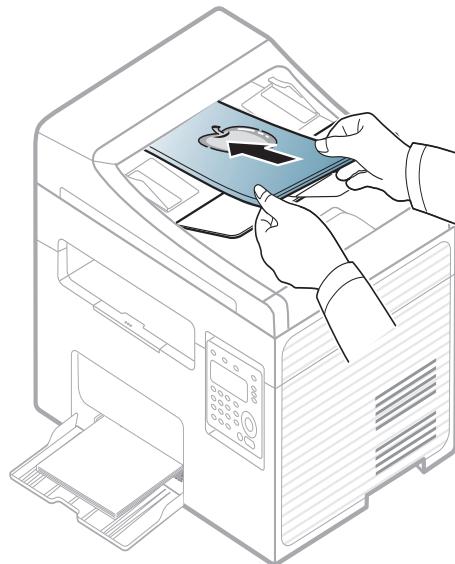


Media and tray

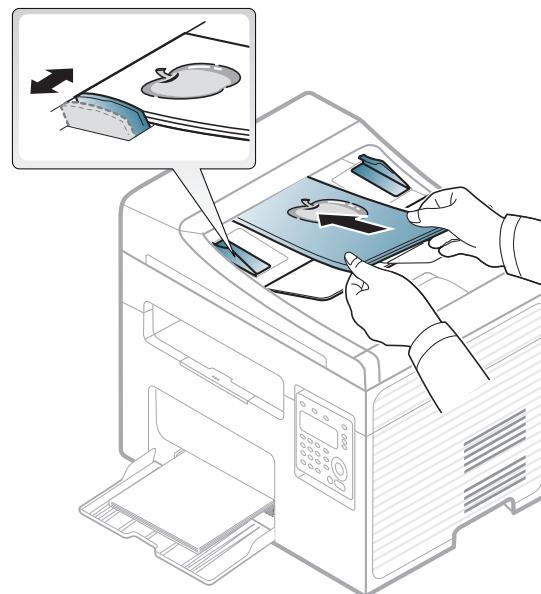
- 2 Flex or fan the edge of the paper stack to separate the pages before loading originals.



- 3 Load the original face up into the document feeder input tray. Make sure that the bottom of the original stack matches the paper size marked on the document input tray.



- 4 Adjust the document feeder width guides to the paper size.



Dust on the document feeder glass may cause black lines on the printout. Always keep the glass clean (see "Cleaning the machine" on page 81).

Basic printing



For special printing features, refer to the Advanced Guide (see "Using advanced print features" on page 229).

Printing



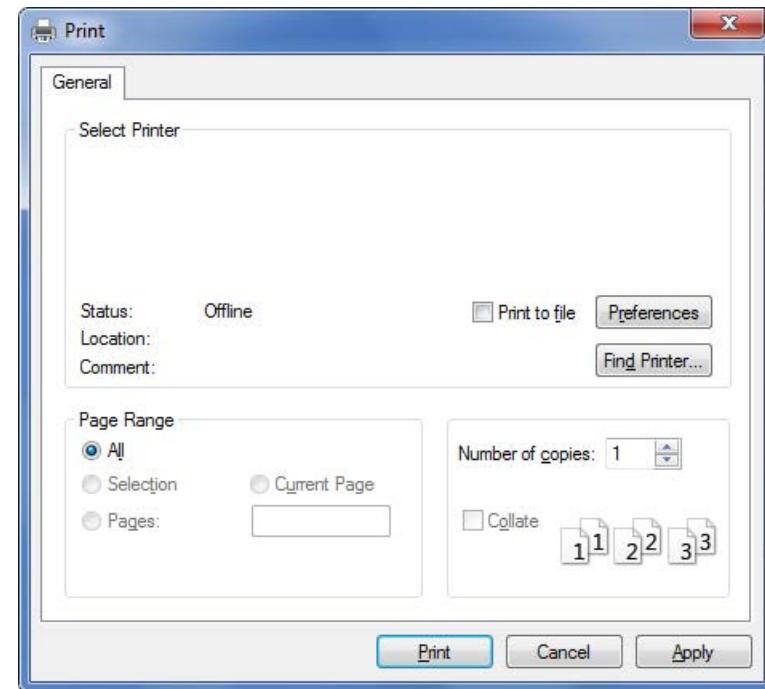
If you are a Macintosh or Linux operating systems user, refer to the Advanced Guide (see "Macintosh printing" on page 237 or "Linux printing" on page 238).

The following **Printing Preferences** window is for Notepad in Windows 7.

- 1 Open the document you want to print.
- 2 Select **Print** from the **File** menu.

3

Select your machine from the **Select Printer** list.



4

The basic print settings including the number of copies and print range are selected within the **Print** window.

5

To start the print job, click **OK** or **Print** in the **Print** window.



To take advantage of the advanced printing features, click **Properties** or **Preferences** from the **Print** window (see "Opening printing preferences" on page 55).

Basic printing

Canceling a print job

If the print job is waiting in the print queue or print spooler, cancel the job as follows:

- You can access this window by simply double-clicking the machine icon () in the Windows task bar.
- You can also cancel the current job by pressing  (Stop/Clear) on the control panel.

Basic printing

Opening printing preferences



- The **Printing Preferences** window that appears in this user's guide may differ depending on the machine in use.
- When you select an option in **Printing Preferences**, you may see a warning mark or . An mark means you can select that certain option but it is not recommended, and an mark means you cannot select that option due to the machine's setting or environment.

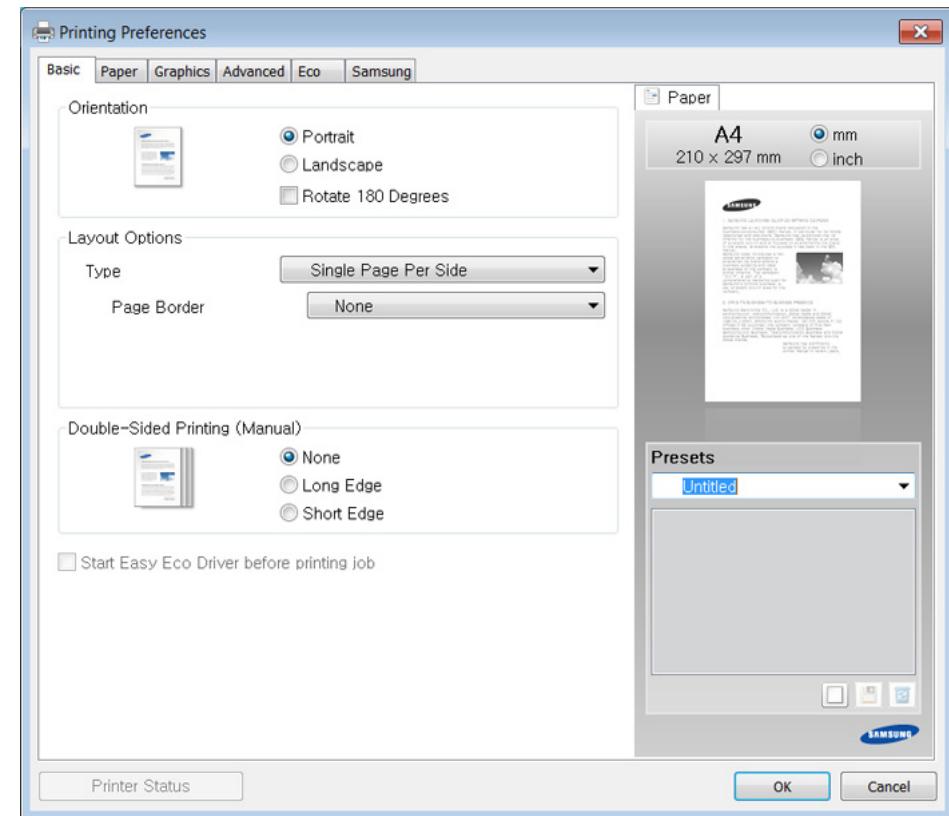
1 Open the document you want to print.

2 Select **Print** from the file menu. The **Print** window appears.

3 Select your machine from the **Select Printer**.

4

Click **Properties** or **Preferences**.



You can check the machine's current status pressing the **Printer Status** button (see "Using Samsung Printer Status" on page 277).

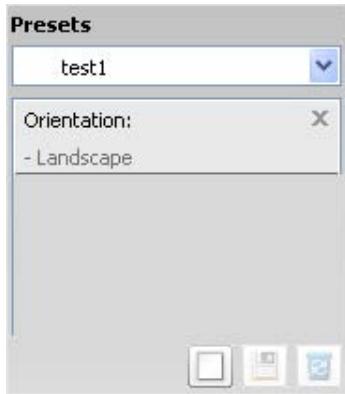
Basic printing

Using a favorite setting

The **Presets** option, which is visible on each preferences tab except for the **Samsung** tab, allows you to save the current preferences for future use.

To save a **Presets** item, follow these steps:

- 1 Change the settings as needed on each tab.
- 2 Enter a name for the item in the **Presets** input box.



- 3 Click (Add). When you save **Presets**, all current driver settings are saved.



Select more options and click (Update), settings will be added to the Presets you made. To use a saved setting, select it from the **Presets** drop-down list. The machine is now set to print according to the settings you have selected.

To delete saved settings, select it from the **Presets** drop-down list and click (Delete).

You can also restore the printer driver's default settings by selecting **Default Preset** from the **Presets** drop-down list.

Using help

Click the option you want to know on the **Printing Preferences** window and press **F1** on your keyboard.

Basic printing

Eco printing

The **Eco** function cuts toner consumption and paper usage. The **Eco** function allows you to save print resources and lead you to eco-friendly printing.

If you press the **Eco** button from the control panel, eco mode is enabled. The default setting of Eco mode is **Multiple Pages per Side (2)** and **Toner Save**.

Setting Eco mode on the control panel

 If your machine has + / - buttons on the control panel or the machine is not supported by network (see "Control panel overview" on page 24):

You can set the machine's settings by using the **Device Settings** in Samsung Easy Printer Manager program or **Machine** section in Printer Settings Utility program.

- For Windows and Macintosh users, see "Device Settings" on page 276.
- For Linux users, see "Using Smart Panel" on page 279.



- The settings set from the machine's driver override the settings on the control panel.
- Accessing menus may differ from model to model (see "Accessing the menu" on page 33).
- It may be necessary to press **OK** to navigate to lower-level menus for some models.

1

Select  (**Menu**) > **System Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Eco Settings** on the control panel.

2

Select the option you want and press **OK**.

- **Default Mode:** Select this to turn on or off the eco mode. (Toner save/2-up)
 - **Off:** Set the eco mode off.
 - **On:** Set the eco mode on.



If you set the eco mode on with a password from the SyncThru™ Web Service (**Settings** tab > **Machine Settings** > **System** > **Eco** > **Settings**) or Samsung Easy Printer Manager (**Device Settings** > **Eco**), the **On force** message appears. You have to enter the password to change the eco mode status.

Basic printing

- **Select Temp.:** Follow the settings from SyncThru™ Web Service or Samsung Easy Printer Manager. Before you select this item, you must set the eco function in SyncThru™ Web Service (**Settings** tab > **Machine Settings > System > Eco > Settings**) or Samsung Easy Printer Manager (**Device Settings > Eco**).
 - **Default Eco:** The machine is set to **Default Eco** mode.
 - **Custom Eco:** Change any necessary values.

3 Press **OK** to save the selection.

Setting eco mode on the driver

Open the Eco tab to set Eco mode. When you see the eco image (, that means the eco mode is currently enabled.

Eco options

- **Printer Default:** Follows the settings from the machine's control panel.
- **None:** Disables Eco mode.
- **Eco Printing:** Enables eco mode. Activate the various Eco items you want to use.
- **Password:** If the administrator fixed to enable the Eco mode, you have to enter the password to change the status.

Result simulator

Result Simulator shows the results of reduced emission of carbon dioxide, used electricity, and the amount of saved paper in accordance with the settings you selected.

- The results are calculated on the basis that the total number of printed paper is one hundred without a blank page when the Eco mode is disabled.
- Refers to the calculation coefficient about CO₂, energy, and paper from **IEA**, the index of Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communication of Japan and www.remanufacturing.org.uk. Each model has a different index.
- The power consumption in printing mode refers to the average printing power consumption of this machine.
- The actual amount displayed is only an estimate as the actual amount may differ depending on the operating system used, computing performance, application software, connection method, media type [thickness], media size, job complexity, etc.

Basic copying



For special printing features, refer to the Advanced Guide (see "Copy menu" on page 192).

Basic copy



If your has machine for + /- buttons on the control panel (see "Control panel overview" on page 24):

- a Place a single original face down on the scanner glass.
- b If you want to customize the copy settings including darkness, original type and more by using the **Device Settings** in Samsung Easy Printer Manager program or **Machine** section in Printer Settings Utility program.
 - For Windows and Macintosh users, see "Device Settings" on page 276.
 - For Linux users, see "Using Smart Panel" on page 279.
- c Enter the number of copies using the +/- buttons if necessary.
- d Press (Start).

1

Select (copy) on the control panel.

2

Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder (see "Loading originals" on page 50).

3

If you want to customize the copy settings including **Reduce/Enlarge**, **Darkness**, **Contrast**, **Original Type**, and more by using the control panel buttons (see "Changing the settings for each copy" on page 59).

4

Enter the number of copies using the arrow or number keypad, if necessary.

5

Press (Start).



If you need to cancel the copying job during the operation, press (Stop/Clear) and the copying will stop.

Changing the settings for each copy

Your machine provides default settings for copying so that you can quickly and easily make a copy.

Basic copying



- If you press the (Stop/Clear) button twice while setting the copy options, all of the options you have set for the current copy job will be canceled and returned to their default status. Or, they will automatically return to their default status after the machine completes the copy in progress.
- Accessing menus may differ from model to model (see "Accessing the menu" on page 33).

If your has machine for + /- buttons on the control panel:

You can customize the copy settings such as darkness, original type and more by using the **Device Settings** in Samsung Easy Printer Manager program or the **Machine** section in Printer Settings Utility program.

- For Windows and Macintosh users, see "Device Settings" on page 276.
- For Linux users, see "Using Smart Panel" on page 279.
- It may be necessary to press **OK** to navigate to lower-level menus for some models.

Darkness

If you have an original containing faint marking and dark images, you can adjust the brightness to make a copy that is easier to read.

1 Select (copy) > (Menu) > **Copy Feature** > **Darkness** on the control panel.

2 Select the option you want and press **OK**.

For example, the **Light+5** being the lightest, and the **Dark+5** being the darkest.

3 Press (Stop/Clear) to return to ready mode.

Contrast

The **Contrast** menu lets you increase or decrease the difference between the bright and dark areas of an image.

1 Select (copy) > (Menu) > **Copy Feature** > **Contrast** on the control panel.

2 Select the option you want and press **OK**.

Select **Dark** to heighten the contrast and select **Light** to reduce it.

3 Press (Stop/Clear) to return to ready mode.

Original

The original setting is used to improve the copy quality by selecting the document for the current copy job.

Basic copying

1 Select  (copy) >  (Menu) > **Copy Feature** > **Original Type** on the control panel.

2 Select the option you want and press **OK**.

- **Text**: Use for originals containing mostly text.
- **Text/Photo**: Use for originals with mixed text and photographs.



If texts in the printout is blurry, select **Text** to get the clear texts.

- **Photo**: Use when the originals are photographs.

3 Press  (Stop/Clear) to return to ready mode.

Reduced or enlarged copy

You can reduce or enlarge the size of a copied image from 25% to 400% from the document feeder or scanner glass.



- This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Variety feature" on page 10).
- If the machine set to Eco mode, reduce and enlarge features are not available.

To select from the predefined copy sizes

1 Select  (copy) >  (Menu) > **Copy Feature** > **Reduce/Enlarge** on the control panel.

2 Select the option you want and press **OK**.

3 Press  (Stop/Clear) to return to ready mode.

To scale the copy by directly entering the scale rate

1 Select  (copy) >  (Menu) > **Copy Feature** > **Reduce/Enlarge** > **Custom** on the control panel.

2 Enter the copy size you want using the numeric keypad.

3 Press **OK** to save the selection.

4 Press  (Stop/Clear) to return to ready mode.



When you make a reduced copy, black lines may appear at the bottom of your copy.

ID card copying

Your machine can print 2-sided originals on one sheet.

Basic copying

The machine prints one side of the original on the upper half of the paper and the other side on the lower half without reducing the size of the original. This feature is helpful for copying a small-sized item such as business card.

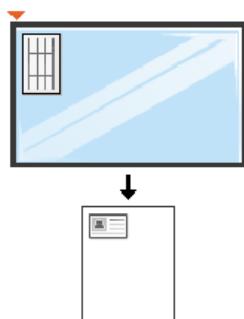


- The original must be placed on the scanner glass to use this feature.
- If the machine set to Eco mode, this feature is not available.

Depending on the model, the operating procedure may differ.

1 Press **ID Copy** on the control panel.

2 Place the front side of an original facing down on the scanner glass where arrows indicate as shown. Then, close the scanner lid.



3 **Place Front Side and Press [Start]** appears on the display.

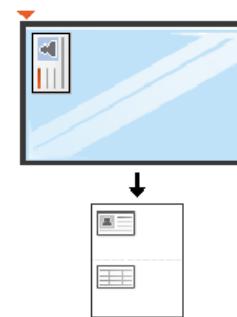
If your machine has +/- buttons on the control panel, the Front LED on the control panel lights on.

4 Press **◆ (Start)**.

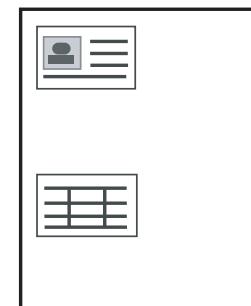
Your machine begins scanning the front side and shows **Place Back Side and Press [Start]**.

If your machine has +/- buttons on the control panel, the Back LED on the control panel lights on.

5 Turn the original over and place it on the scanner glass where arrows indicate as shown. Then, close the scanner lid.



6 Press **◆ (Start)** button.



Basic copying



- If you do not press the  (Start) button, only the front side will be copied.
- If the original is larger than the printable area, some portions may not be printed.

Basic scanning



For special scanning features, refer to the Advanced Guide (see "Scan features" on page 243).

Basic Scanning

This is the normal and usual procedure for scanning originals.

This is a basic scanning method for USB-connected machine.



- It may be necessary to press **OK** to navigate to lower-level menus for some models.
- If you want to scan using the network, refer to the Advanced Guide (see "Scanning from network connected machine" on page 244).

1 Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder (see "Loading originals" on page 50).

2 Select (scan) > **Scan to PC** on the control panel.

OR

Press **Scan to** on the control panel.



If you see **Not Available** message, check the port connection, or select **Enable Scan from Device Panel in Samsung Easy Printer Manager** >



Switch to advanced mode > **Scan to PC Settings**.

3

Select the scan destination you want and press **OK**.

Default setting is **My Documents**.



- You can create and save the frequently used settings as a profile list. Also you can add and delete the profile and save each profile to a different path.
- To change the **Samsung Easy Printer Manager** > Switch to advanced mode > **Scan to PC Settings**.

4

Select the option you want and press **OK**.

5

Scanning begins.



Scanned image is saved in computer's **C:\Users\users name\My Documents**. The saved folder may differ, depending on your operating system or the application you are using.

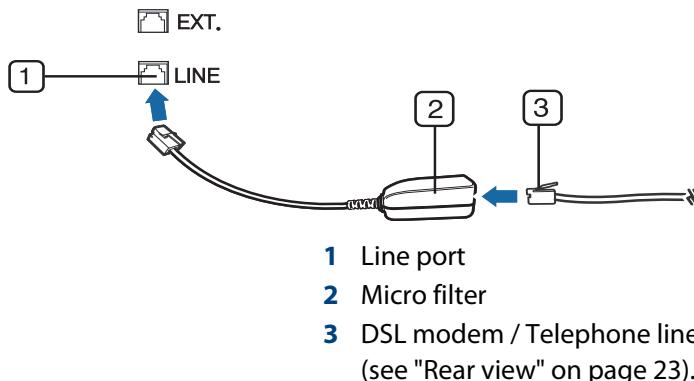
Basic faxing



- This function is not supported for SCX-340x/SCX-340xW Series (see "Control panel overview" on page 24).
- For special faxing features, refer to the Advanced Guide (see "Fax features" on page 254).



- You cannot use this machine as a fax via the internet phone. For more information ask your internet service provider.
- We recommend using traditional analog phone services (PSTN: Public Switched Telephone Network) when connecting telephone lines to use a fax machine. If you use other Internet services (DSL, ISDN, VoIP), you can improve the connection quality by using the Micro-filter. The Micro-filter eliminates unnecessary noise signals and improves connection quality or Internet quality. Since the DSL Micro-filter is not provided with the machine, contact your Internet service provider for use on DSL Micro-filter.



Preparing to fax

Before you send or receive a fax, you need to connect the supplied line cord to your telephone wall jack (see "Rear view" on page 23). Refer to the Quick Installation Guide how to make a connection. The method of making a telephone connection is different from one country to another.

Sending a fax



When you place the originals, you can use either the document feeder or the scanner glass. If the originals are placed on both the document feeder and the scanner glass, the machine will read the originals on the document feeder first, which has higher priority in scanning.

- 1 Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder (see "Loading originals" on page 50).
- 2 Select (fax) on the control panel.
- 3 Adjust the resolution and the darkness to suit your fax needs (see "Adjusting the document settings" on page 67).

Basic faxing

- 4 Enter the destination fax number (see "Keypad letters and numbers" on page 223).
- 5 Press  (Start) on the control panel. The machine starts to scan and send the fax to the destinations.

-  If you want to send a fax directly from your computer, use Samsung Network PC Fax (see "Sending a fax in the computer" on page 255).
- When you want to cancel a fax job, press  (Stop/Clear) before the machine starts transmission.
- If you used the scanner glass, the machine shows the message asking to place another page.

Sending a fax manually

Perform the following to send a fax using  (On Hook Dial) on the control panel.

-  If your machine is a handset model, you can send a fax using the handset (see "Variety feature" on page 10).

- 1 Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder (see "Loading originals" on page 50).
- 2 Select  (fax) on the control panel.
- 3 Adjust the resolution and the darkness to suit your fax needs (see "Adjusting the document settings" on page 67).
- 4 Press  (On Hook Dial) on the control panel or lift the handset.
- 5 Enter a fax number using the number keypad on the control panel.
- 6 Press  (Start) on the control panel when you hear a high-pitched fax signal from the remote fax machine.

Sending a fax to multiple destinations

You can use the multiple send feature, which allows you to send a fax to multiple locations. Originals are automatically stored in memory and sent to a remote station. After transmission, the originals are automatically erased from memory.

-  You cannot send faxes with this feature if you chosen super fine as an option or if the fax is in color.

Basic faxing

1 Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder (see "Loading originals" on page 50).

2 Select  (fax) on the control panel.

3 Adjust the resolution and the darkness to suit your fax needs (see "Adjusting the document settings" on page 67).

4 Select  (Menu) > **Fax Feature** > **Multi Send** on the control panel.

5 Enter the number of the first receiving fax machine and press **OK**.

You can press speed dial numbers or select a group dial number using the  (Address book) button.

6 Enter the second fax number and press **OK**.

The display asks you to enter another fax number to send the document.

7 To enter more fax numbers, press **OK** when **Yes** appears and repeat steps 5 and 6.

- You can add up to 10 destinations.
- Once you have entered a group dial number, you cannot enter another group dial number.

8 When you have finished entering fax numbers, select **No** at the **Another No.?** prompt and press **OK**.

The machine begins sending the fax to the numbers you entered in the order in which you entered them.

Multi send report is printed after sending faxes.

Receiving a fax

Your machine is preset Fax mode at the factory. When you receive a fax, the machine answers the call on a specified number of rings and automatically receives the fax.

Adjusting the document settings

Before starting a fax, change the following settings according to your original's status to get the best quality.



It may be necessary to press **OK** to navigate to lower-level menus for some models.

Basic faxing

Resolution

The default document settings produce good results when using typical text-based originals. However, if you send originals that are of poor quality, or contain photographs, you can adjust the resolution to produce a higher quality fax.

1 Select  (fax) >  (Menu) > **Fax Feature** > **Resolution** on the control panel.

2 Select the option you want and press **OK**.

- **Standard**: Originals with normal sized characters.
- **Fine**: Originals containing small characters or thin lines or originals printed using a dot-matrix printer.
- **Super Fine**: Originals containing extremely fine detail. **Super Fine** mode is enabled only if the machine with which you are communicating also supports the Super Fine resolution.

 For memory transmission, **Super Fine** mode is not available. The resolution setting is automatically changed to **Fine**.
When your machine is set to **Super Fine** resolution and the fax machine with which you are communicating does not support **Super Fine** resolution, the machine transmits using the highest resolution mode supported by the other fax machine.

- **Photo Fax**: Originals containing shades of gray or photographs.

- **Color Fax**: Original with colors.



- Memory transmission is not available in this mode.
- You can only send a color fax if the machine you are communicating with supports color fax reception and you send the fax manually.



3 Press  (Stop/Clear) to return to ready mode.

Darkness

You can select the degree of darkness of the original document.



The darkness setting is applied to the current fax job. To change the default setting (see "Fax menu" on page 199).

1 Select  (fax) >  (Menu) > **Fax Feature** > **Darkness** on the control panel.

2 Select a darkness level you want.

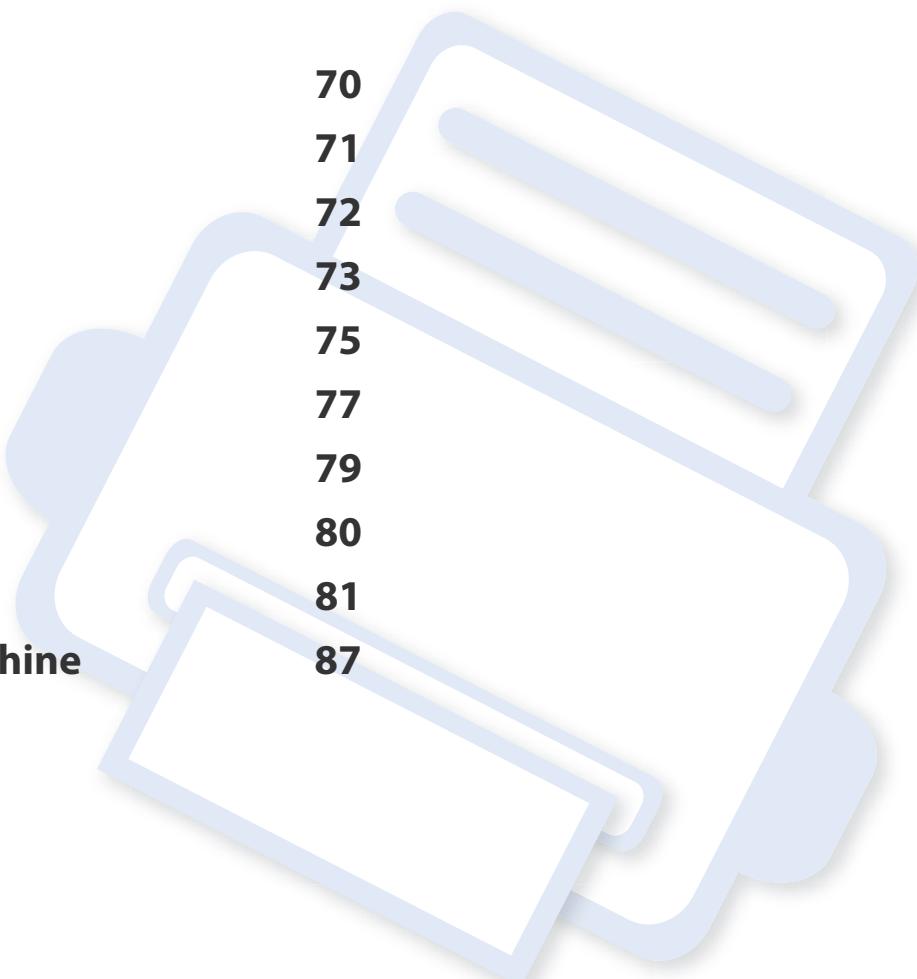
3 Press  (Stop/Clear) to return to ready mode.



3. Maintenance

This chapter provides information about purchasing supplies, accessories and maintenance parts available for your machine.

- **Ordering supplies and accessories**
- **Available supplies**
- **Available maintenance parts**
- **Storing the toner cartridge**
- **Redistributing toner**
- **Replacing the toner cartridge**
- **Monitoring the supplies life**
- **Setting the toner low alert**
- **Cleaning the machine**
- **Tips for moving & storing your machine**



Ordering supplies and accessories



Available accessories may differ from country to country. Contact your sales representatives to obtain the list of available supplies, and maintenance parts.

To order Samsung-authorized supplies, accessories, and maintenance parts, contact your local Samsung dealer or the retailer where you purchased your machine. You can also visit www.samsung.com/supplies, and then select your country/region to obtain the contact information for service.

Available supplies

When supplies reach the end of their life spans, you can order the followings of supplies for your machine:

| Type | Average yield ^a | Part name |
|-----------------|----------------------------|-----------|
| Toner cartridge | Approx. 1,500 pages | MLT-D101S |

a. Declared yield value in accordance with ISO/IEC 19752. The number of pages may be affected by operating environment, printing interval, graphics, media type and media size.



Depending on the options, percentage of image area and job mode used, the toner cartridge's lifespan may differ.



When purchasing new toner cartridges or other supplies, these must be purchased in the same country as the machine you are using. Otherwise, new toner cartridges or other supplies will be incompatible with your machine due to different configurations of toner cartridges and other supplies according to the specific country conditions.



Samsung does not recommend using non-genuine Samsung toner cartridge such as refilled or remanufactured toner. Samsung cannot guarantee non-genuine Samsung toner cartridge's quality. Service or repair required as a result of using non-genuine Samsung toner cartridges will not be covered under the machine's warranty.

Available maintenance parts

To purchase maintenance parts, contact the source where you bought the machine. Replacing maintenance parts can be performed only by an authorized service provider, dealer, or the retailer where you bought the machine. The warranty does not cover the replacement of any maintenance parts once it has reached its "Average yield".

Maintenance parts are replaced at specific intervals to avoid print quality and paper feed problems resulting from worn parts, see table below. The purpose of which is to maintain your machine in top working condition. The maintenance parts below should be replaced when the life span of each item has been met.

| Parts | Average yield ^a |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Transfer Roller | Approx. 30,000 pages |
| Fuser Unit | Approx. 30,000 pages |
| Pick-Up Roller | Approx. 30,000 pages |
| Feed Roller | Approx. 30,000 pages |
| ADF Feed Roller^b | Approx. 20,000 pages |
| ADF Rubber Pad^b | Approx. 20,000 pages |

a. It will be affected by the operating system used, computing performance, application software, connecting method, media, media size and job complexity.

b. This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Variety feature" on page 10).

Storing the toner cartridge

Toner cartridges contain components that are sensitive to light, temperature and humidity. Samsung suggests users follow these recommendations to ensure optimal performance, highest quality, and longest life from your new Samsung toner cartridge.

Store this cartridge in the same environment in which the printer will be used. This should be in controlled temperature and humidity conditions. The toner cartridge should remain in its original and unopened package until installation – if original packaging is not available, cover the top opening of the cartridge with paper and store in a dark cabinet.

Opening the cartridge package prior to use dramatically shortens its useful shelf and operating life. Do not store on the floor. If the toner cartridge is removed from the printer, follow the instructions below to store the toner cartridge properly.

- Store the cartridge inside the protective bag from the original package.
- Store lying flat (not standing on end) with the same side facing up as if it were installed in the machine.
- Do not store consumables in any of the following conditions:
 - Temperature greater than 40°C (104°F).
 - Humidity range less than 20% or greater than 80%.
 - An environment with extreme changes in humidity or temperature.
 - Direct sunlight or room light.
 - Dusty places.
 - A car for a long period of time.
 - An environment where corrosive gases are present.

- An environment with salty air.

Handling instructions

- Do not touch the surface of the photoconductive drum in the cartridge.
- Do not expose the cartridge to unnecessary vibrations or shock.
- Never manually rotate the drum, especially in the reverse direction; this can cause internal damage and toner spillage.

Toner cartridge usage

Samsung Electronics does not recommend or approve the use of non-Samsung brand toner cartridges in your printer including generic, store brand, refilled, or remanufactured toner cartridges.



Samsung's printer warranty does not cover damage to the machine caused by the use of a refilled, remanufactured, or non-Samsung brand toner cartridges.

Storing the toner cartridge

Estimated cartridge life

Estimated cartridge life (the life of the toner cartridge yield) depends on the amount of toner that print jobs require. The actual print yield may vary depending on the print density of the pages you print on, operating environment, percentage of image area, printing interval, media type and/or media size. For example, if you print a lot of graphics, the consumption of the toner is higher and you may need to change the cartridge more often.

Redistributing toner

When the toner cartridge is near the end of its life:

- White streaks or light printing occurs and/or density variation side to side.
- The **Status** LED blinks red. In the case of machine with a **Toner** LED, it blinks orange.

If this happens, you can temporarily improve print quality by redistributing the remaining toner in the cartridge. In some cases, white streaks or light printing will still occur even after you have redistributed the toner.

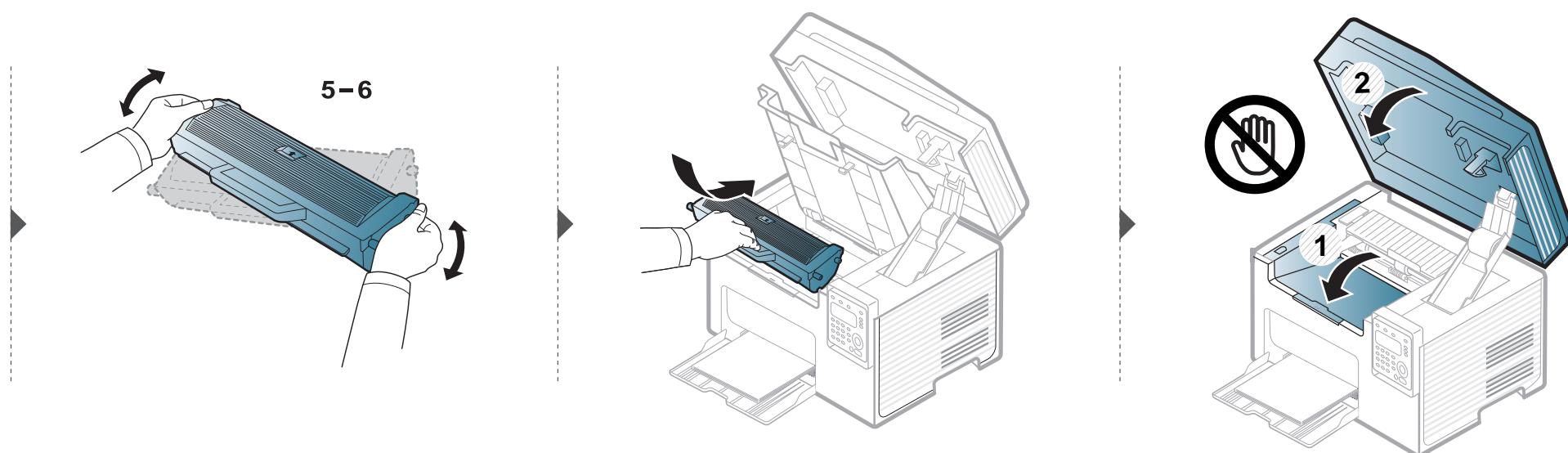
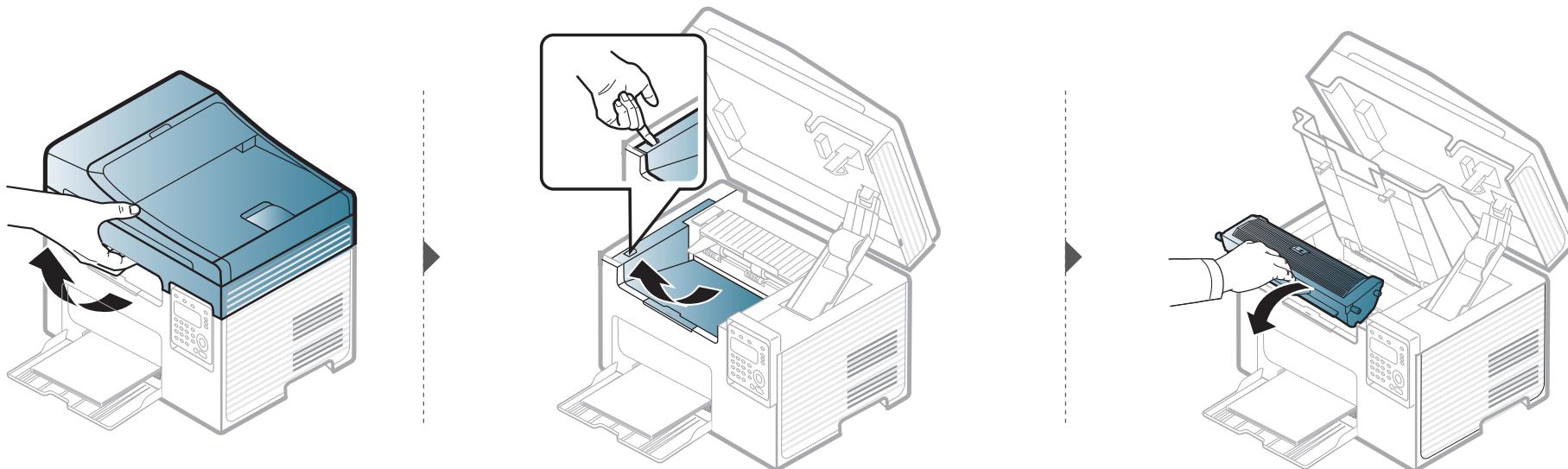


Illustrations on this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models. Check your machine type (see "Front view" on page 21).



- To prevent damage to the toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover it with a piece of paper, if necessary.
- Do not touch the green area of the toner cartridge. Use the handle on the cartridge to avoid touching this area.
- Do not use sharp objects such as a knife or scissors to open the toner cartridge package. They might scratch the drum of the cartridge.
- If toner gets on your clothing, wipe it off with a dry cloth and wash clothing in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.
- When opening a scan unit, hold the document feeder and scan unit together.

Redistributing toner



Replacing the toner cartridge



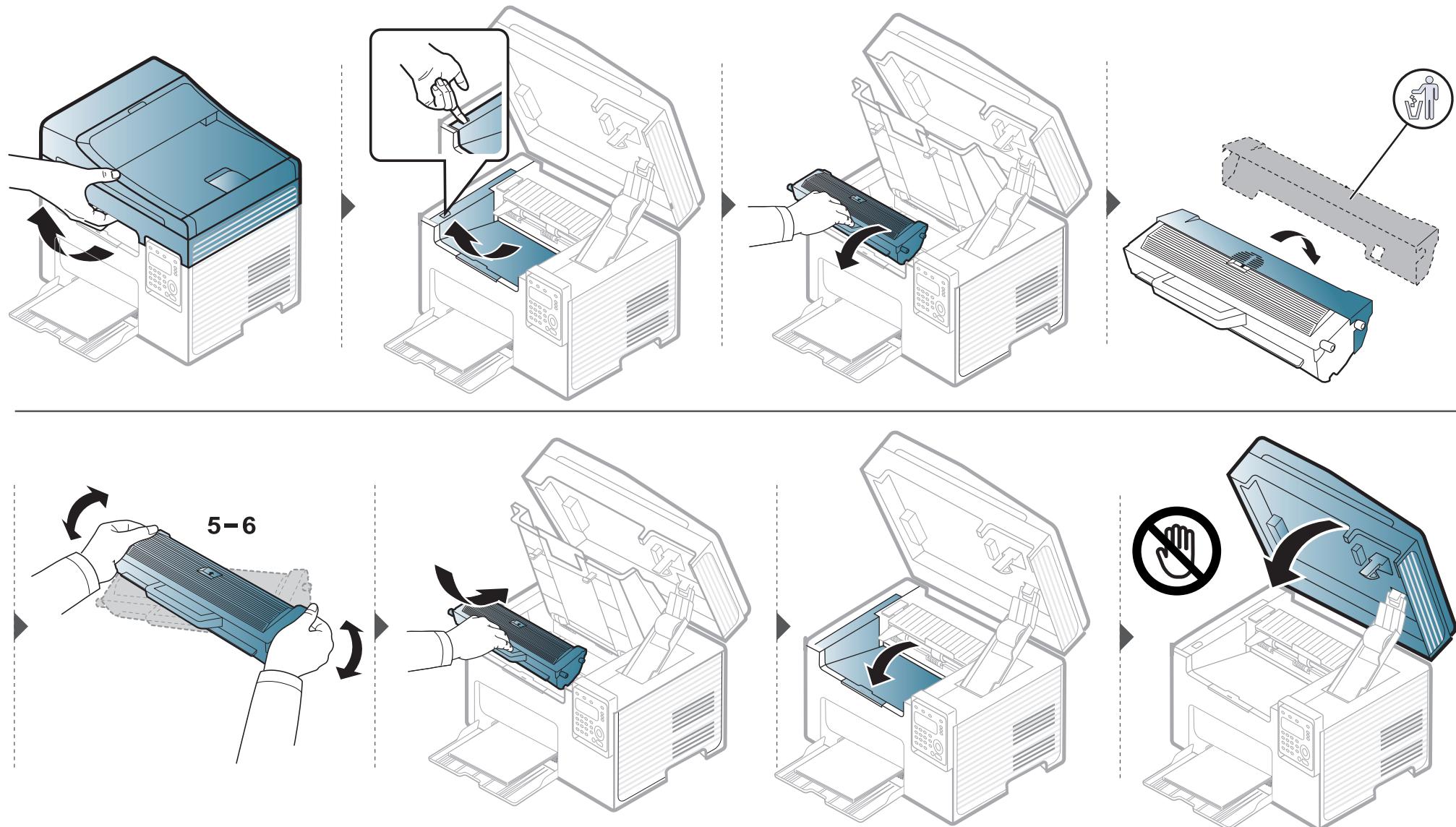
- Shake the toner cartridge thoroughly, it will increase the initial print quality.
- Illustrations on this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models. Check your machine type (see "Front view" on page 21).



- To prevent damage to the toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover it with a piece of paper, if necessary.
- Do not touch the green area of the toner cartridge. Use the handle on the cartridge to avoid touching this area.
- Do not use sharp objects such as a knife or scissors to open the toner cartridge package. They might scratch the drum of the cartridge.
- If toner gets on your clothing, wipe it off with a dry cloth and wash clothing in cold water. Hot water sets toner into fabric.
- When opening a scan unit, hold the document feeder and scan unit together.

When a toner cartridge has reached the end of life, the machine will stop printing.

Replacing the toner cartridge



Monitoring the supplies life

If you experience frequent paper jams or printing problems, check the number of pages the machine has printed or scanned. Replace the corresponding parts, if necessary.



- If your machine has +/− buttons on the control panel (see "Control panel overview" on page 24):
In ready mode, press and hold (Stop/Clear) button for about 6 seconds, then release. A supplied Information report prints out.
- It may be necessary to press **OK** to navigate to lower-level menus for some models.

1 Select (Menu) > **System Setup** > **Maintenance** > **Supplies Life** on the control panel.

2 Select the option you want and press **OK**.

- **Total:** Displays the total number of pages printed.
- **ADF Scan:** Displays the number of pages printed by using the document feeder.
- **Platen Scan:** Displays the number of pages scanned by using scanner glass.
- **Supplies Info.:** Prints the supply information page.

3 Press (Stop/Clear) to return to ready mode.

Setting the toner low alert

If the amount of toner in the cartridge is low, a message or LED informing the user to change the toner cartridge appears. You can set the option for whether or not this message or LED appears.



If your has machine for + /- buttons on the control panel (see "Control panel overview" on page 24):

You can set the machine's settings by using the **Device Settings** in Samsung Easy Printer Manager program or **Machine** section in Printer Settings Utility program.

- For Windows and Macintosh users, see "Device Settings" on page 276.
- For Linux users, see "Using Smart Panel" on page 279.

- 1 Select (Menu) > **System Setup** > **Maintenance** > **TonerLow Alert** on the control panel.
- 2 Select the option you want.
- 3 Press **OK** to save the selection.

Cleaning the machine

If printing quality problems occur or if you use your machine in a dusty environment, you need to clean your machine regularly to keep it in the best printing condition and use your machine longer.



- Cleaning the cabinet of the machine with cleaning materials containing large amounts of alcohol, solvents, or other strong substances can discolor or distort the cabinet.
- If your machine or the surrounding area is contaminated with toner, we recommend you use a cloth or tissue dampened with water to clean it. If you use a vacuum cleaner, toner blows in the air and might be harmful to you.

Cleaning the outside

Clean the machine cabinet with a soft, lint-free cloth. Dampen the cloth slightly with water, but be careful not to let any water drip onto or into the machine.

Cleaning the machine

Cleaning the inside

During the printing process, paper, toner, and dust particles can accumulate inside the machine. This buildup can cause print quality problems, such as toner specks or smearing. Cleaning the inside of the machine clears and reduces these problems.

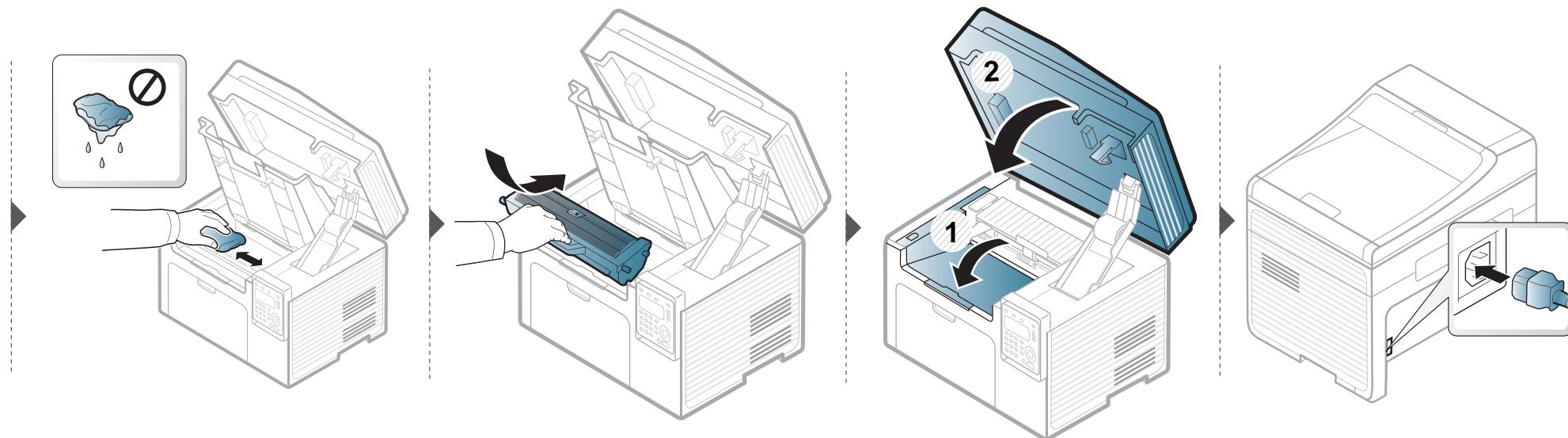
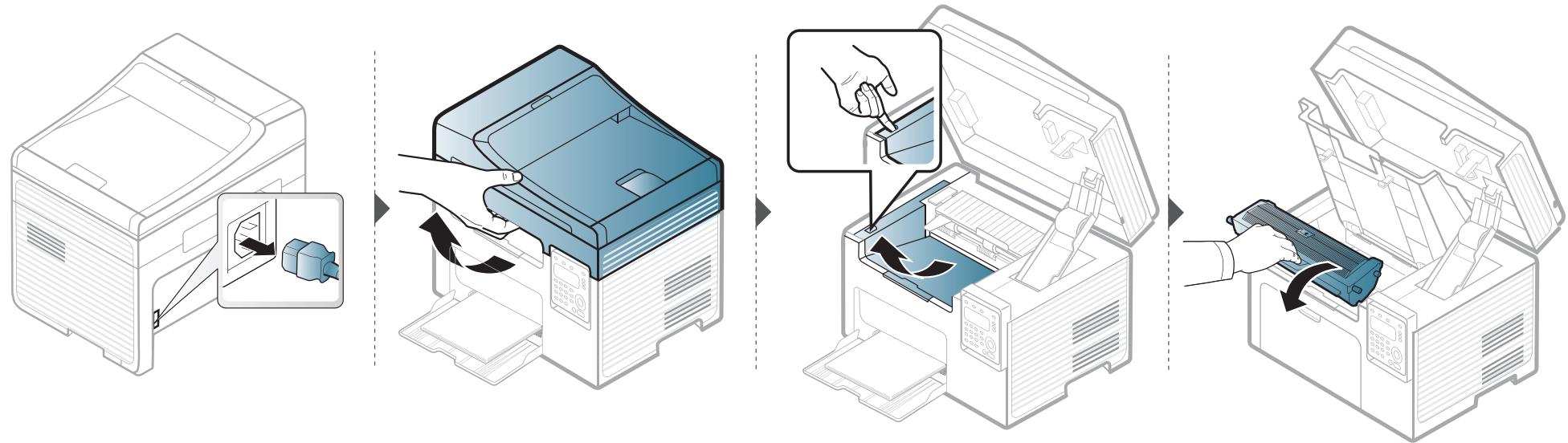


- To prevent damage to the toner cartridge, do not expose it to light for more than a few minutes. Cover it with a piece of paper, if necessary.
- Do not touch the green area of the toner cartridge. Use the handle on the cartridge to avoid touching this area.
- Use a dry lint free cloth when cleaning the inside of the machine, be careful not to damage the transfer roller or any other inside parts. Do not use solvents such as benzene or thinner. Printing quality problems can occur and cause damage to the machine.



- Use a dry lint-free cloth to clean the machine.
- Turn the machine off and unplug the power cord. Wait for the machine to cool down. If your machine has a power switch, turn the power switch off before cleaning the machine.
- Illustrations on this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models. Check your machine type (see "Front view" on page 21).
- When opening a scan unit, hold the document feeder and scan unit together.

Cleaning the machine

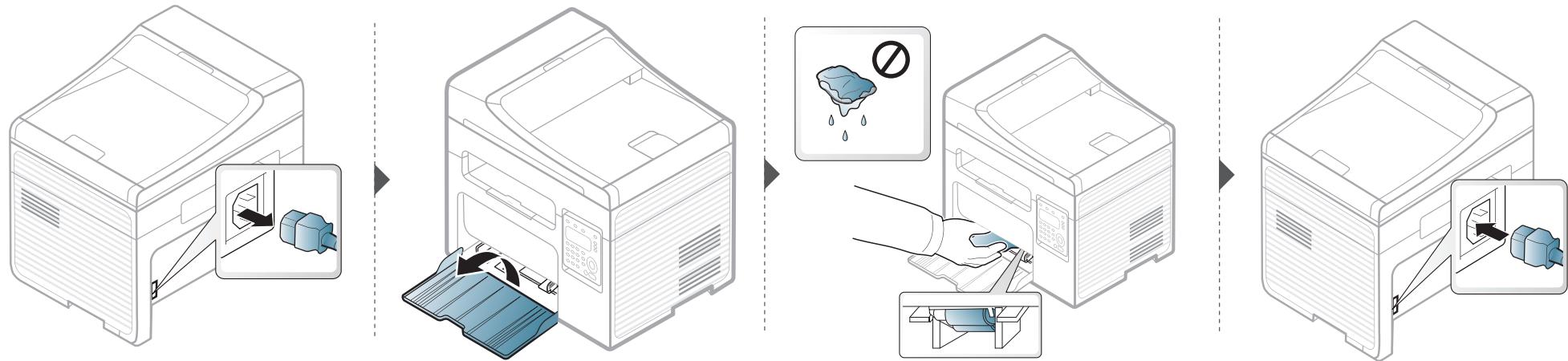


Cleaning the machine

Cleaning the pickup roller



- Turn the machine off and unplug the power cord. Wait for the machine to cool down. If your machine has a power switch, turn the power switch off before cleaning the machine.
- Illustrations on this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models. Check your machine type (see "Front view" on page 21).



Cleaning the machine

Cleaning the scan unit

Keeping the scan unit clean helps ensure the best possible copies. We suggest that you clean the scan unit at the start of each day and during the day as needed.

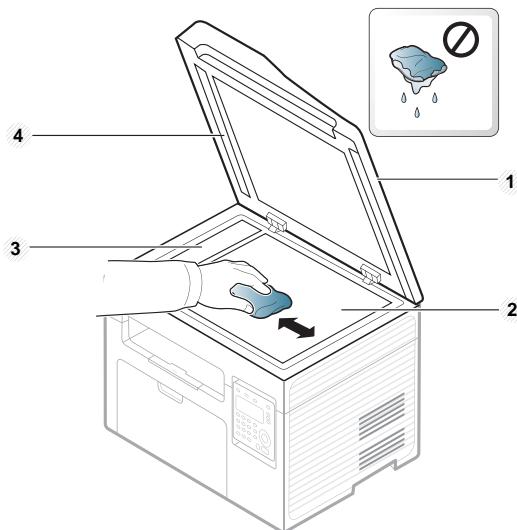


- Turn the machine off and unplug the power cord. Wait for the machine to cool down. If your machine has a power switch, turn the power switch off before cleaning the machine.
- Illustrations on this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models. Check your machine type (see "Front view" on page 21).

- 1 Slightly dampen a soft, lint-free cloth or paper towel with water.
- 2 Lift and open the scanner lid.

Cleaning the machine

- 3 Wipe the surface of the scanner until it is clean and dry.



- 1 Scanner lid
- 2 Scanner glass
- 3 Document feeder glass
- 4 White bar

- 4 Close the scanner lid.

Tips for moving & storing your machine

- When moving the machine, do not tilt or turn it upside down. Otherwise, the inside of the machine may be contaminated by toner, which can cause damage to the machine or reduce print quality.
- When moving the machine, make sure at least two people are holding the machine securely.



4. Troubleshooting

This chapter gives helpful information for what to do if you encounter an error.

- **Tips for avoiding paper jams**
- **Clearing original document jams**
- **Clearing paper jams**
- **Understanding the status LED**
- **Understanding display messages**



This chapter gives helpful information for what to do if you encounter an error. If your machine has a display screen, check the message on the display screen first to solve the error.

If you cannot find a solution to your problem in this chapter, refer to the **Troubleshooting** chapter in the Advanced Guide (see "Troubleshooting" on page 285).

If you cannot find a solution in the User's Guide or the problem persists, call for service.

89
90
95
99
101

Tips for avoiding paper jams

By selecting the correct media sizes, most paper jams can be avoided. To avoid paper jams, refer to the following guidelines:

- Ensure that the adjustable guides are positioned correctly (see "Tray overview" on page 41).
- Do not remove paper from the tray while your machine is printing.
- Flex, fan, and straighten paper before loading.
- Do not use creased, damp, or highly curled paper.
- Do not mix papers in a tray.
- Use only recommended print media (see "Print media specifications" on page 109).

Clearing original document jams

When an original document jams in the document feeder, a warning message appears on the display.



To avoid tearing the document, remove the jammed document slowly and carefully.



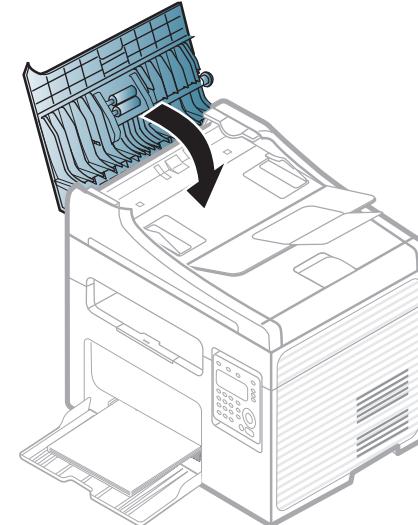
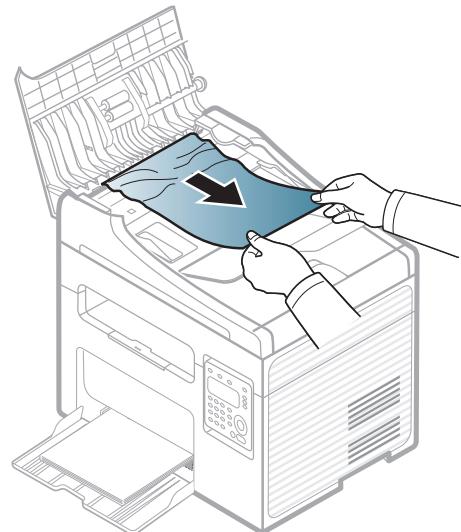
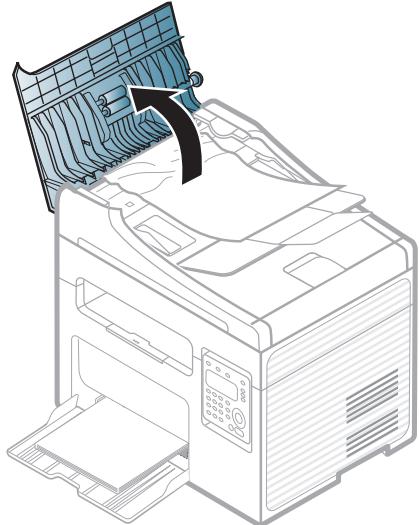
To prevent document jams, use the scanner glass for thick, thin or mixed paper- originals.

Clearing original document jams

Original paper jam in front of scanner



- Illustrations on this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models. Check your machine type (see "Front view" on page 21).
- This troubleshooting may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Variety feature" on page 10).



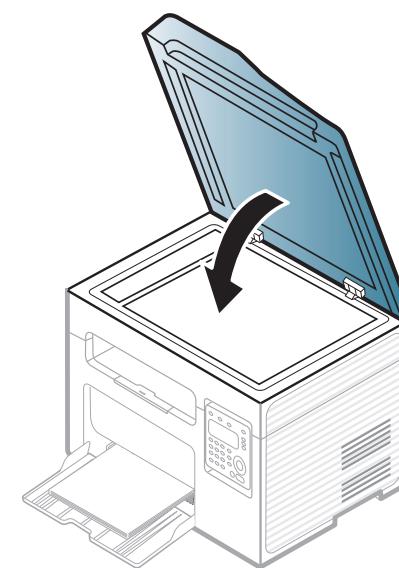
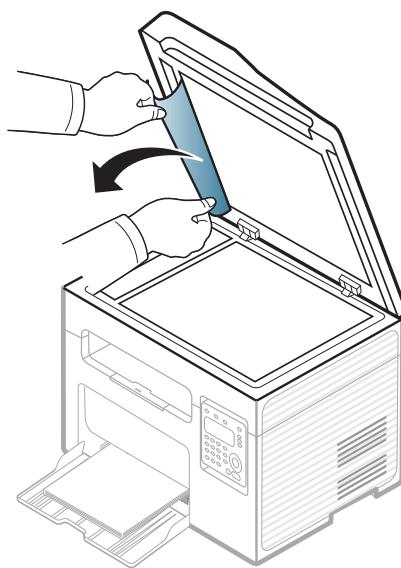
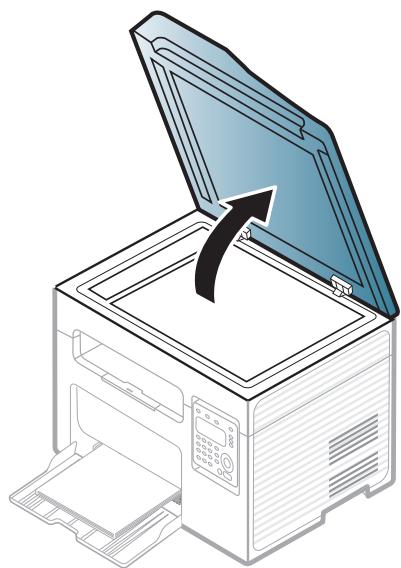
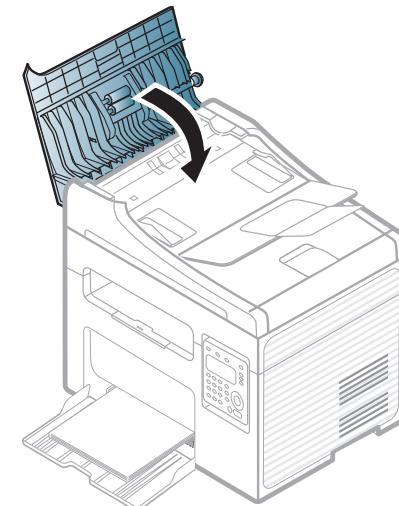
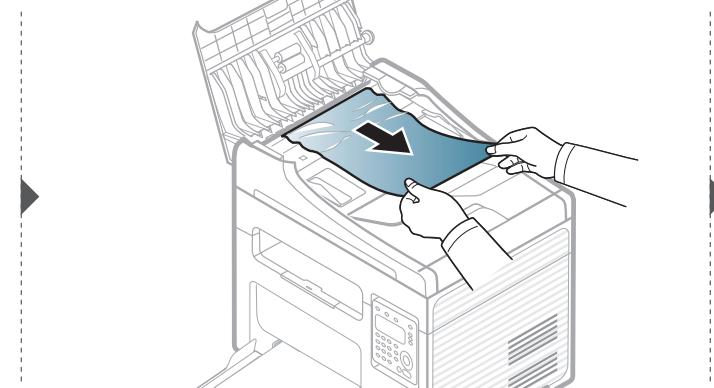
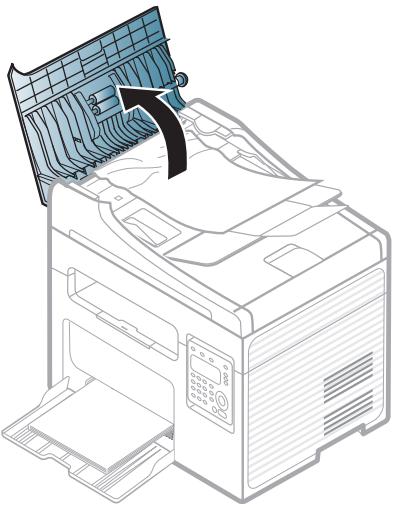
Clearing original document jams

Original paper jam inside of scanner



- Illustrations on this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models. Check your machine type (see "Front view" on page 21).
- This troubleshooting may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Variety feature" on page 10).

Clearing original document jams



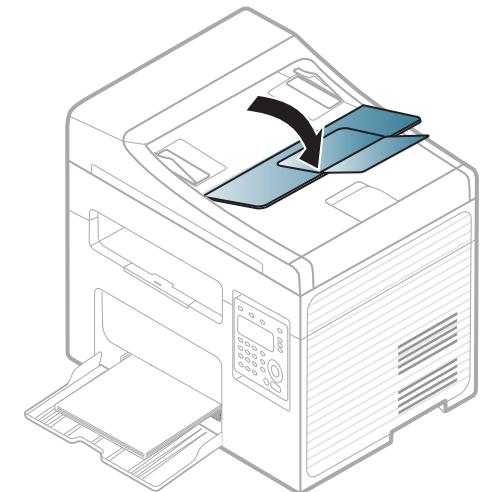
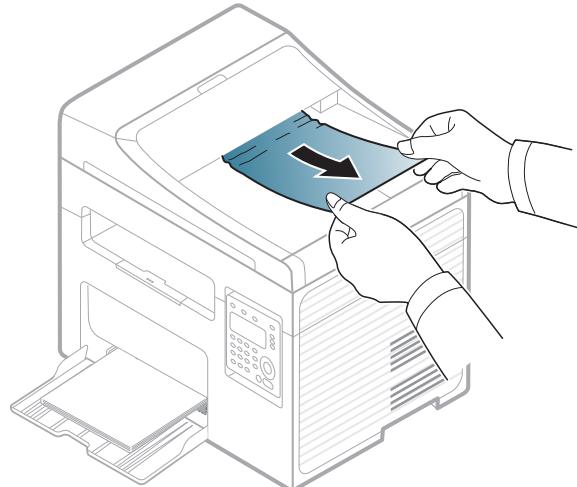
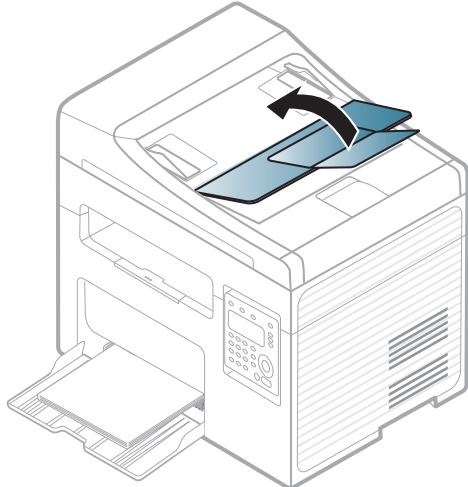
Clearing original document jams

Original paper jam in exit area of scanner



- Illustrations on this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models. Check your machine type (see "Front view" on page 21).
- This troubleshooting may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Front view" on page 21).

- 1 Remove any remaining pages from the document feeder.
- 2 Gently remove the jammed paper from the document feeder.



Clearing paper jams



To avoid tearing the paper, pull the jammed paper out slowly and gently.

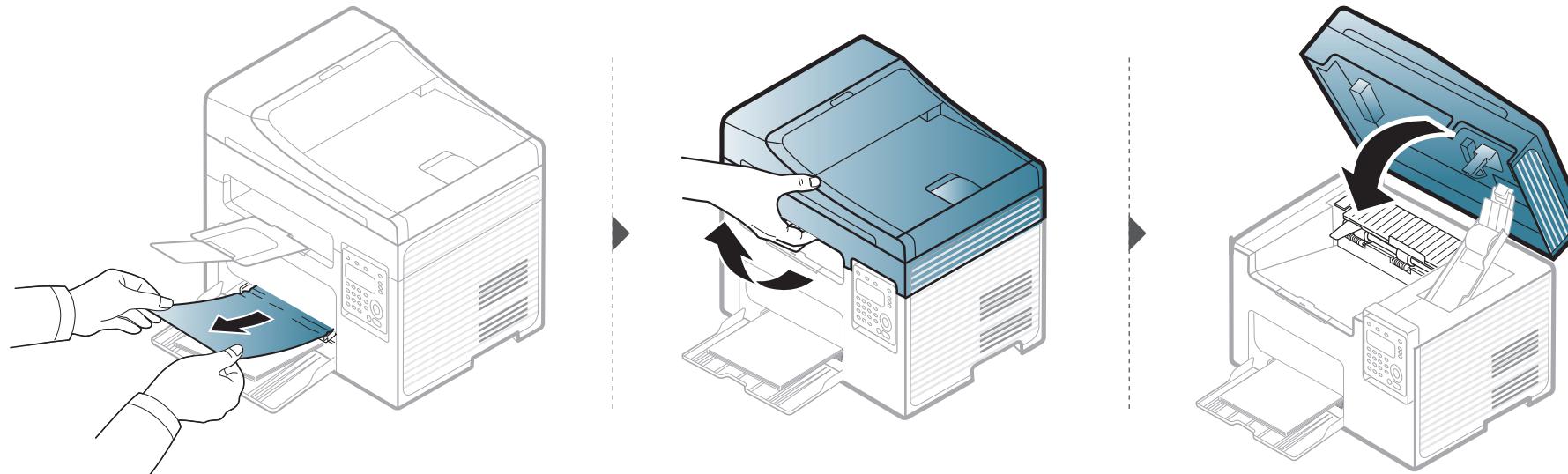
In tray



Click this link to open an animation about clearing a jam.



Illustrations on this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models. Check your machine type (see "Front view" on page 21).



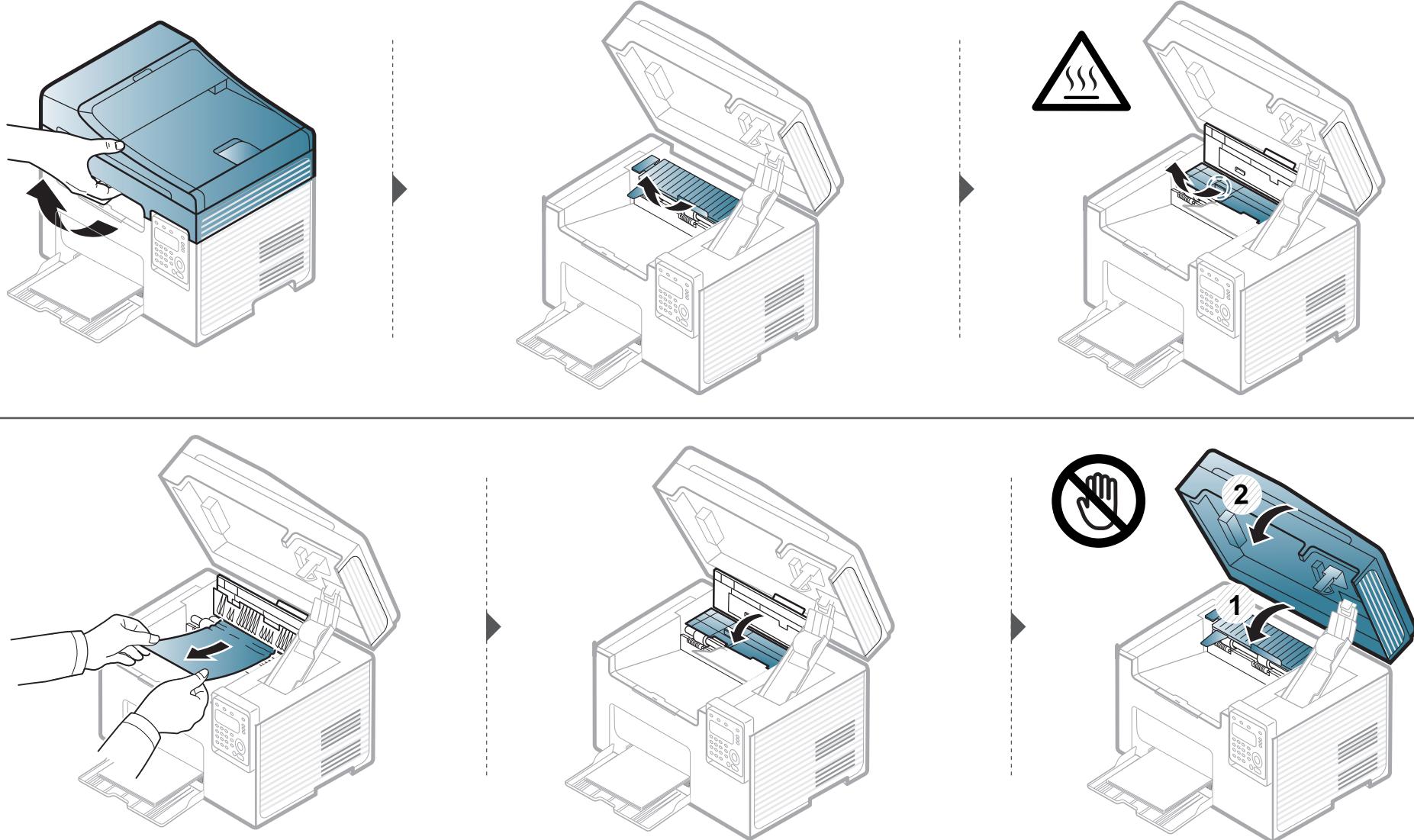
Clearing paper jams

Inside the machine



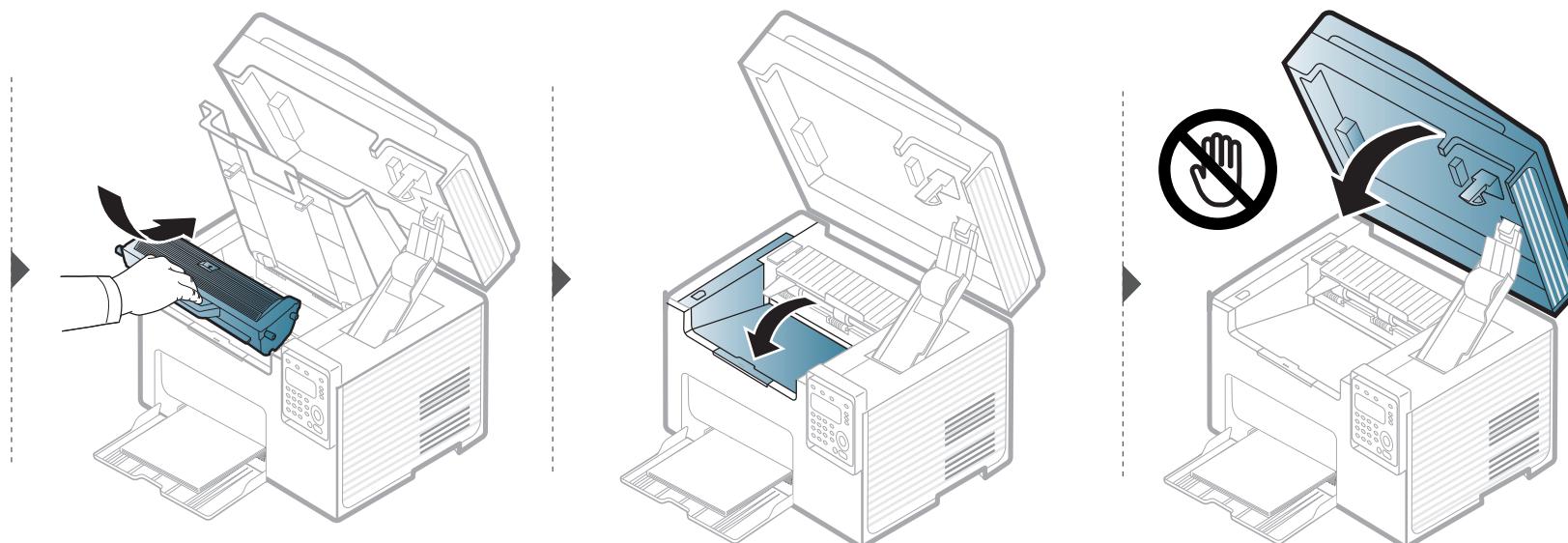
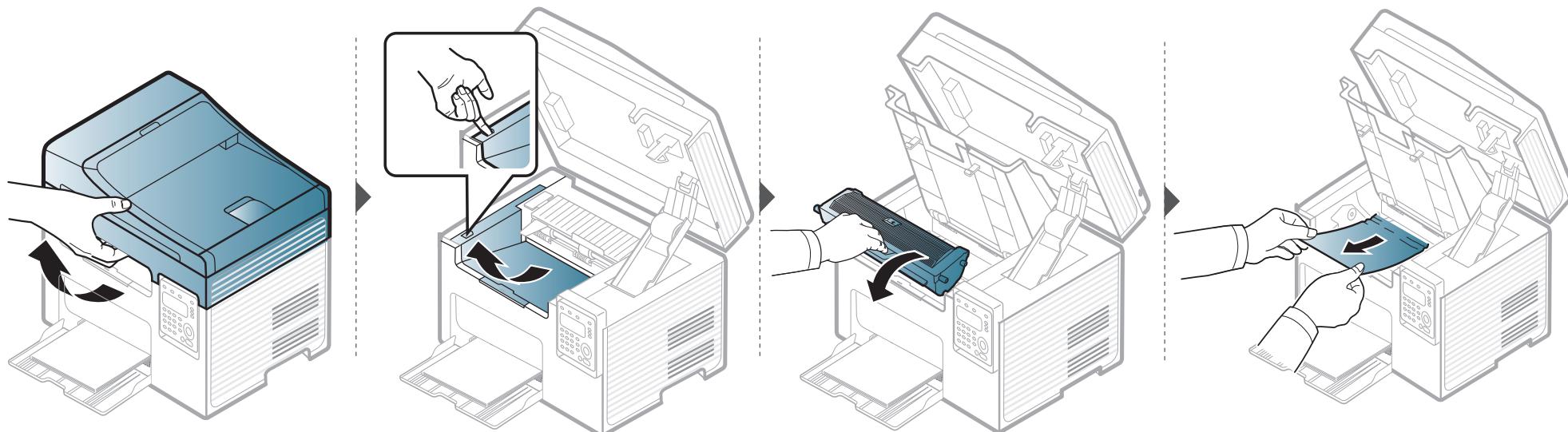
- The fuser area is hot. Take care when removing paper from the machine.
- Illustrations on this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models. Check your machine type (see "Front view" on page 21).

Clearing paper jams



Clearing paper jams

If you do not see the paper in this area, stop and go to next step:



Understanding the status LED

The color of the LED indicates the machine's current status.



- Some LEDs may not be available depending on model or country (see "Control panel overview" on page 24).
- To resolve the error, look at the error message and its instructions from the troubleshooting part (see "Understanding display messages" on page 101).
- You also can resolve the error with the guideline from the computer's Samsung Printing Status or Smart Panel program window (see "Using Samsung Printer Status" on page 277 or "Using Smart Panel" on page 279).
- If the problem persists, call a service representative.

| LED | Status | | Description |
|--------|------------|-----------------|---|
| Status | Off | | The machine is off-line. |
| | Green | Blinking | When the backlight blinks, the machine is receiving or printing data. |
| | | On | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The machine is on-line and can be used. |
| | Red | Blinking | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• A minor error has occurred and the machine is waiting for the error to be cleared. Check the display message. When the problem is cleared, the machine resumes.• Small amount of toner is left in the cartridge. The estimated cartridge life^a of toner is close. Prepare a new cartridge for replacement. You may temporarily increase the printing quality by redistributing the toner (see "Redistributing toner" on page 75).^b |
| | | On | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• A toner cartridge has almost reached its estimated cartridge life^a. It is recommended to replace the toner cartridge (see "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 77).• The cover is opened. Close the cover.• There is no paper in the tray when receiving or printing data. Load paper in the tray.• The machine has stopped due to a major error. Check the display message (see "Understanding display messages" on page 101).• A paper jam has occurred (see "Clearing paper jams" on page 95). |

Understanding the status LED

| LED | Status | | Description |
|--|---------------|-----------------|--|
| () WPS^b | Blue | Blinking | The machine is connecting to a wireless network. |
| | | On | The machine is connected to a wireless network (see "Wireless network setup" on page 156). |
| | | Off | The machine is disconnected from a wireless network. |
| () Power | Blue | On | The machine is in power save mode. |
| | | Off | The machine is in ready mode or machine's power is off. |
| Eco | Green | On | Eco mode is on. The default setting of Eco mode is 2-up and toner save. |
| | | Off | Eco mode is off. |
| | | Blinking | Small amount of toner is left in the cartridge. The estimated cartridge life ^a of toner is close. Prepare a new cartridge for replacement. You may temporarily increase the printing quality by redistributing the toner (see "Redistributing toner" on page 75). |
| Toner^b | Orange | On | A toner cartridge has almost reached its estimated cartridge life ^a . It is recommended to replace the toner cartridge (see "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 77). |
| | | Off | All toner cartridges are at normal capacity. |

a. Estimated cartridge life means the expected or estimated toner cartridge life, which indicates the average capacity of print-outs and is designed pursuant to ISO/IEC 19752. The number of pages may be affected by operating environment, percentage of image area, printing interval, graphics, media and media size. Some amount of toner may remain in the cartridge even when red LED is on and the printer stops printing.

b. Some LEDs may not be available depending on model or country (see "Control panel overview" on page 24).

Understanding display messages

Messages appear on the control panel display to indicate the machine's status or errors. Refer to the tables below to understand the messages' and their meaning, and correct the problem, if necessary.



- This function is not supported for SCX-340x/SCX-340xW Series. You can resolve the error with the guideline from the computers's Printing Status or Smart Panel program window (see "Using Samsung Printer Status" on page 277 or "Using Smart Panel" on page 279).
- If a message is not in the table, reboot the power and try the printing job again. If the problem persists, call a service representative.
- When you call for service, provide the service representative with the contents of display message.
- Some messages may not appear on the display depending on the options or models.
- [error number] indicates the error number.

Paper Jam-related messages

| Message | Meaning | Suggested solutions |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|
| Document jam. | The loaded original document has jammed in the document feeder. | Clear the jam (see "Clearing original document jams" on page 90). |
| Remove jam | | |
| Jam or empty | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Paper has jammed in the paper feed area. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Clear the jam (see "In tray" on page 95). |
| Door open&close | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• There is no paper in tray. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Load paper in tray (see "Loading paper in the tray" on page 42). |
| Paper Jam inside machine | Paper has jammed in the inside machine. | Clear the jam (see "Inside the machine" on page 96). |

Understanding display messages

Toner-related messages

| Message | Meaning | Suggested solutions |
|---------------------------------------|---|---|
| Install Toner Cartridge | A toner cartridge is not installed. | Install a toner cartridge. |
| Not Compatible Toner cartridge | The toner cartridge you have installed is not for your machine. | Install a Samsung-genuine toner cartridge, designed for your machine. |
| Prepare new cartridge | Small amount of toner is left in the indicated cartridge. The estimated cartridge life of toner is close. | Prepare a new cartridge for a replacement. You may temporarily increase the printing quality by redistributing the toner (see "Redistributing toner" on page 75). |

Understanding display messages

| Message | Meaning | Suggested solutions |
|------------------------------|--|--|
| Replace new cartridge | <p>The indicated toner cartridge has almost reached its estimated cartridge life.</p> <p> Estimated cartridge life means the expected or estimated toner cartridge life, which indicates the average capacity of print-outs and is designed pursuant to ISO/IEC 19752 (see "Available supplies" on page 71). The number of pages may be affected by operating environment, percentage of image area, printing interval, media, percentage of image area, and media size. Some amount of toner may remain in the cartridge even when replace new cartridge appears and the machine stops printing.</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• You can choose Stop or Continue as shown on the control panel. If you select Stop, the printer stops printing and you cannot print any more without changing the cartridge. If you select Continue, the printer keeps printing but the printing quality cannot be guaranteed.• Replace the toner cartridge for the best print quality when this message appears. Using a cartridge beyond this stage can result in printing quality issues (see "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 77). <p> Samsung does not recommend using a non-genuine Samsung toner cartridge such as refilled or remanufactured. Samsung cannot guarantee a non-genuine Samsung toner cartridge's quality. Service or repair required as a result of using non-genuine Samsung toner cartridges will not be covered under the machine warranty.</p> |
| | <p>The indicated toner cartridge has reached its estimated cartridge life. The machine might stop printing.</p> | <p>Replace the toner cartridge (see "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 77).</p> |

Understanding display messages

Tray-related messages

| Message | Meaning | Suggested solutions |
|----------------------------|--|--|
| Jam or empty | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Paper has jammed in the paper feed area. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Clear the jam (see "In tray" on page 95). |
| Door open&close | <ul style="list-style-type: none">There is no paper in tray. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Load paper in tray (see "Loading paper in the tray" on page 42). |

Network-related messages

| Message | Meaning | Suggested solutions |
|---|--|---|
| Network Problem: IP Conflict | The network IP address you have set is being used by someone else. | Check the IP address and reset it if necessary (see "Printing a network configuration report" on page 141). |
| Wireless | Wireless module is not installed. | Call for service. |
| Network Error | | |

Understanding display messages

Misc. messages

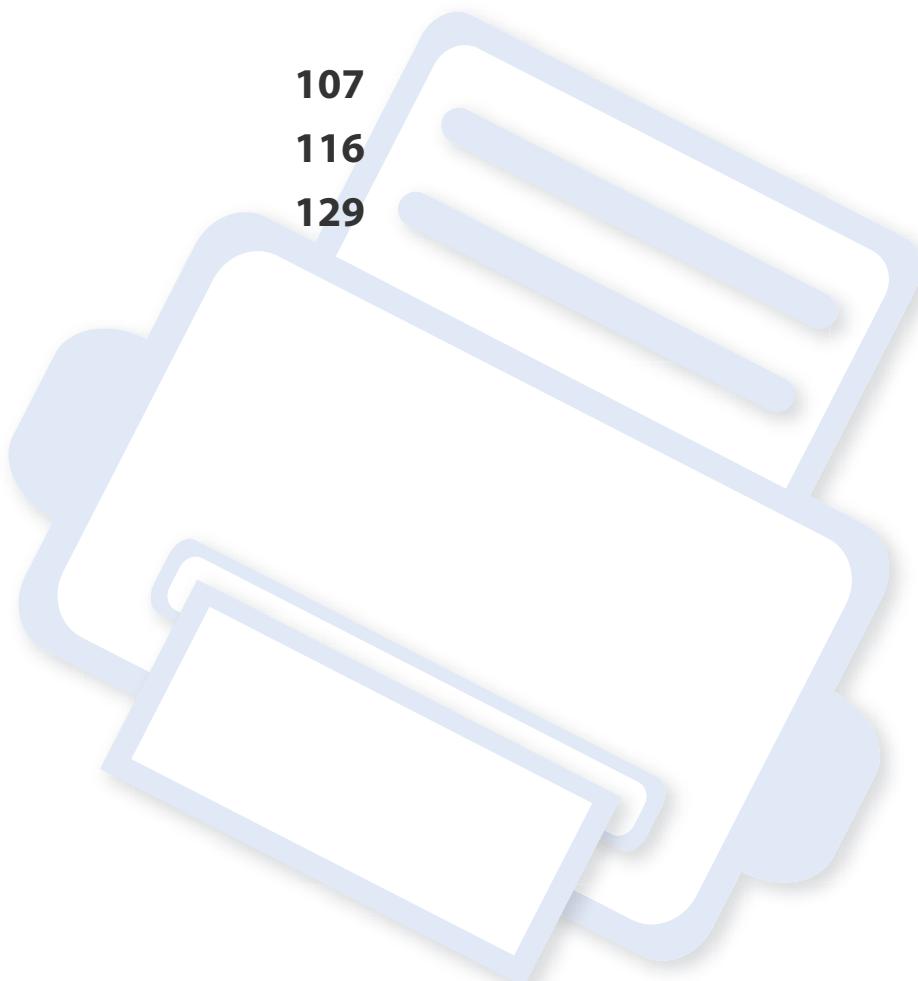
| Message | Meaning | Suggested solutions |
|--|--|--|
| Door Open Close it | The cover is not securely latched. | Close the cover until it locks into place. |
| Door of scanner is open. | The document feeder cover is not securely latched. | Close the cover until it locks into place. |
| Error [error number] Turn off then on | The machine unit cannot be controlled. | Reboot the power and try the printing job again. If the problem persists, please call for service. |
| Error [error number] Call for service | | |
| Scanner Locked | The scanner is locked. | Reboot the power. If the problem persists, please call for service. |



5. Appendix

This chapter provides product specifications and information concerning applicable regulations.

- **Specifications**
- **Regulatory information**
- **Copyright**



Specifications

General specifications



The specification values listed below are subject to change without notice. See www.samsung.com for possible changes in information.

| Items | | Description | |
|--------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Dimension | Width x Length x Height | SCX-340x Series | 389 x 274 x 249 mm (15.31 x 10.79 x 9.80 inches) |
| | | SCX-340xW Series | |
| | SCX-340xF Series | 402 x 293 x 296 mm (15.83 x 11.54x 11.65 inches) | |
| | | SCX-340xFW Series | |
| | SCX-340xFH/ SCX-340xHW Series ^a | 407 x 293 x 296 mm (16.02 x 11.54x 11.65 inches) | |
| Weight | Machine with consumables | SCX-340x Series | 6.65 Kg (14.66 lbs) |
| | | SCX-340xW Series | |
| | SCX-340xF Series | 8 Kg (17.64lbs) | |
| | | SCX-340xFW Series | |
| | SCX-340xFH/ SCX-340xHW Series ^a | | |
| Noise Level^b | Ready mode | Less than 26 dB (A) | |
| | Print mode | Less than 50 dB (A) | |
| | Copy mode | Scanner glass | Less than 50 dB (A) |
| | | Document feeder | Less than 52 dB (A) |
| | Scan mode | Scanner glass | Less than 52 dB (A) |
| | | Document feeder | Less than 54 dB (A) |
| Temperature | Operation | 10 to 32°C (50 to 89.6°F) | |
| | Storage (packed) | -20 to 40°C (-4 to 104°F) | |

Specifications

| Items | | Description |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| Humidity | Operation | 20 to 80% RH |
| | Storage (packed) | 10 to 90% RH |
| Power rating^c | 110 volt models | AC 110 - 127 V |
| | 220 volt models | AC 220 - 240 V |
| Power consumption | Average operating mode | Less than 310 W |
| | Ready mode | Less than 30 W |
| | Power save mode | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SCX-340x Series: Less than 1.2 W • SCX-340xW Series: Less than 1.6 W • SCX-340xF/SCX-340xFH Series: Less than 1.7 W • SCX-340xFW/SCX-340xHW Series: Less than 2.1 W |
| | Power off mode | Less than 0.45 W |
| | Module | T77H262/SPW-B4319S |
| Wireless^d | | |

a. Dimensions and weight are measured without a handset.

b. Sound Pressure Level, ISO 7779. Configuration tested: basic machine installation, A4 paper, simplex printing.

c. See the rating label on the machine for the correct voltage (V), frequency (hertz) and of current (A) for your machine.

d. Wireless models only (see "Features by models" on page 7).

Specifications

Print media specifications

| Type | Size | Dimensions | Print media weight/Capacity ^a | |
|-------------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|---|--|
| | | | Tray | Manual feeding in tray ^b |
| Plain paper | Letter | 216 x 279 mm (8.5 x 11 inches) | 71 to 85 g/m ² (19 to 23 lbs bond) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 150 sheets of 80 g/m² (21 lbs bond) | 71 to 85 g/m ² (19 to 23 lbs bond) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 sheet |
| | Legal | 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches) | | |
| | US Folio | 216 x 330 mm (8.5 x 13 inches) | | |
| | A4 | 210 x 297 mm (8.27 x 11.69 inches) | | |
| | Oficio | 216 x 343 mm (8.5 x 13.5 inches) | | |
| | JIS B5 | 182 x 257 mm (7.17 x 10.12 inches) | | |
| | ISO B5 | 176 x 250 mm (6.93 x 9.84 inches) | | |
| | Executive | 184 x 267 mm (7.25 x 10.5 inches) | | |
| | A5 | 148 x 210 mm (5.83 x 8.27 inches) | | |
| Envelope | Envelope Monarch | 98 x 191 mm (3.87 x 7.5 inches) | 75 to 90 g/m ² (20 to 24 lbs bond) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 10 sheets | 75 to 90 g/m ² (20 to 24 lbs bond) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 sheet |
| | Envelope No. 10 | 105 x 241 mm (4.12 x 9.5 inches) | | |
| | Envelope DL | 110 x 220 mm (4.33 x 8.66 inches) | | |
| | Envelope C5 | 162 x 229 mm (6.38 x 9.02 inches) | | |

Specifications

| Type | Size | Dimensions | Print media weight/Capacity ^a | |
|-------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|---|
| | | | Tray | Manual feeding in tray ^b |
| Thick paper | Refer to the Plain paper section | Refer to the Plain paper section | 86 to 120 g/m ² (23 to 32 lbs bond) • 50 sheets of 120 g/m ² (32 lbs bond) | 86 to 120 g/m ² (23 to 32 lbs bond) • 1 sheet |
| Thin paper | Refer to the Plain paper section | Refer to the Plain paper section | 60 to 70 g/m ² (16 to 19 lbs bond) • 160 sheets of 60 g/m ² (16 lbs bond) | 60 to 70 g/m ² (16 to 19 lbs bond) • 1 sheet |
| Cotton | Refer to the Plain paper section | Refer to the Plain paper section | 75 to 90 g/m ² (20 to 24 lbs bond) • 150 sheets of 80 g/m ² (21 lbs bond) | 75 to 90 g/m ² (20 to 24 lbs bond) • 1 sheet |
| Colored | Refer to the Plain paper section | Refer to the Plain paper section | 75 to 90 g/m ² (20 to 24 lbs bond) • 150 sheets of 80 g/m ² (21 lbs bond) | 75 to 90 g/m ² (20 to 24 lbs bond) • 1 sheet |
| Pre-printed | Refer to the Plain paper section | Refer to the Plain paper section | 75 to 90 g/m ² (20 to 24 lbs bond) • 150 sheets of 80 g/m ² (21 lbs bond) | 75 to 90 g/m ² (20 to 24 lbs bond) • 1 sheet |
| Recycled | Refer to the Plain paper section | Refer to the Plain paper section | 60 to 90 g/m ² (16 to 24 lbs bond) • 150 sheets of 80 g/m ² (21 lbs bond) | 60 to 90 g/m ² (16 to 24 lbs bond) • 1 sheet |

Specifications

| Type | Size | Dimensions | Print media weight/Capacity ^a | |
|------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|--|--|
| | | | Tray | Manual feeding in tray ^b |
| Labels ^c | Letter, Legal, US Folio, A4, JIS B5, ISO B5, Executive, A5 | Refer to the Plain paper section | 120 to 150 g/m ² (32 to 40 lbs bond) • 10 sheets | 120 to 150 g/m ² (32 to 40 lbs bond) • 1 sheet |
| Card stock | Letter, Legal, US Folio, A4, JIS B5, ISO B5, Executive, A5, Postcard 4x6 | Refer to the Plain paper section | 121 to 163 g/m ² (32 to 43 lbs bond) • 10 sheets | 121 to 163 g/m ² (32 to 43 lbs bond) • 1 sheet |
| Bond paper | Refer to the Plain paper section | Refer to the Plain paper section | • 10 sheets | • 1 sheet |
| Archive | Refer to the Plain paper section | Refer to the Plain paper section | • 100 sheets | • 1 sheet |
| Minimum size (custom) | | 76 x 127 mm (3 x 5 inches) | 60 to 163 g/m ² (16 to 43 lbs bond) | |
| Maximum size (custom) | | 216 x 356 mm (8.5 x 14 inches) | | |

a. Maximum capacity may differ depending on media weight, thickness, and environmental conditions.

b. 1 sheet for manual feeding.

c. The smoothness of the labels used in this machine is 100 to 250 (sheffield). This means the numeric level of smoothness.

Specifications

System requirements

Microsoft® Windows®

| Operating system | Requirement (recommended) | | |
|-------------------------|--|-----------------|-----------------|
| | CPU | RAM | free HDD space |
| Windows® 2000 | Intel® Pentium® II 400 MHz (Pentium III 933 MHz) | 64 MB (128 MB) | 600 MB |
| Windows® XP | Intel® Pentium® III 933 MHz (Pentium IV 1 GHz) | 128 MB (256 MB) | 1.5 GB |
| Windows Server® 2003 | Intel® Pentium® III 933 MHz (Pentium IV 1 GHz) | 128 MB (512 MB) | 1.25 GB to 2 GB |
| Windows Server® 2008 | Intel® Pentium® IV 1 GHz (Pentium IV 2 GHz) | 512 MB (2 GB) | 10 GB |
| Windows Vista® | Intel® Pentium® IV 3 GHz | 512 MB (1 GB) | 15 GB |
| Windows® 7 | Intel® Pentium® IV 1 GHz 32-bit or 64-bit processor or higher <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Support for DirectX® 9 graphics with 128 MB memory (to enable the Aero theme).• DVD-R/W Drive | 1 GB (2 GB) | 16 GB |
| Windows Server® 2008 R2 | Intel® Pentium® IV 1 GHz (x86) or 1.4 GHz (x64) processors (2 GHz or faster) | 512 MB (2 GB) | 10 GB |



- Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher is the minimum requirement for all Windows operating systems.
- Users who have administrator rights can install the software.

Specifications

- **Windows Terminal Services** is compatible with your machine.
- For **Windows 2000, Services Pack 4** or higher is required.

Macintosh

| Operating system | Requirements (Recommended) | | |
|----------------------|--|--|----------------|
| | CPU | RAM | Free HDD space |
| Mac OS X 10.4 | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Intel® processors• PowerPC G4/G5 | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 128 MB for a powerPC based Mac (512 MB)• 512 MB for an Intel-based Mac (1 GB) | 1 GB |
| Mac OS X 10.5 | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Intel® processors• 867 MHz or faster Power PC G4/G5 | 512 MB (1 GB) | 1 GB |
| Mac OS X 10.6 | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Intel® processors | 1 GB (2 GB) | 1 GB |
| Mac OS X 10.7 | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Intel® processors | 2 GB | 4 GB |

Specifications

Linux

| Items | Requirements |
|-------------------------|---|
| Operating system | Redhat® Enterprise Linux WS 4, 5 (32/64 bit) Fedora 5 ~ 13 (32/64 bit) SuSE Linux 10.1 (32 bit) OpenSuSE® 10.2, 10.3, 11.0, 11.1, 11.2 (32/64 bit) Mandriva 2007, 2008, 2009, 2009.1, 2010 (32/64 bit) Ubuntu 6.06, 6.10, 7.04, 7.10, 8.04, 8.10, 9.04, 9.10, 10.04 (32/64 bit) SuSE Linux Enterprise Desktop 10, 11 (32/64 bit) Debian 4.0, 5.0 (32/64 bit) |
| CPU | Pentium IV 2.4GHz (Intel Core™2) |
| RAM | 512 MB (1 GB) |
| Free HDD space | 1 GB (2 GB) |

Specifications

Network environment



Network and wireless models only (see "Features by models" on page 7).

You need to set up the network protocols on the machine to use it as your network machine. The following table shows the network environments supported by the machine.

| Items | Specifications |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Network interface | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Ethernet 10/100 Base-TX Wired Lan• 802.11b/g/n Wireless LAN |
| Network operating system | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Windows 2000/Server 2003 /Server 2008/XP/Vista/7/Server 2008 R2• Various Linux OS• Mac OS X 10.4 ~10.7 |
| Network protocols | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• TCP/IPv4• DHCP, BOOTP• DNS, WINS, Bonjour, SLP, UPnP• Standard TCP/IP Printing (RAW), LPR, IPP, WSD• SNMPv 1/2/3, HTTP, IPSec• TCP/IPv6 (DHCP, DNS, RAW, LPR, SNMPv 1/2/3, HTTP, IPSec) |
| Wireless security | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Authentication: Open System, Shared Key, WPA Personal, WPA2 Personal (PSK)• Encryption: WEP64, WEP128, TKIP, AES |

Regulatory information

This machine is designed for a normal work environment and certified with several regulatory statements.

Laser safety statement

The printer is certified in the U.S. to conform to the requirements of DHHS 21 CFR, chapter 1 Subchapter J for Class I(1) laser products, and elsewhere is certified as a Class I laser product conforming to the requirements of IEC 60825-1 : 2007.

Class I laser products are not considered to be hazardous. The laser system and printer are designed so there is never any human access to laser radiation above a Class I level during normal operation, user maintenance or prescribed service condition.

Warning

Never operate or service the printer with the protective cover removed from laser/scanner assembly. The reflected beam, although invisible, can damage your eyes.

When using this product, these basic safety precautions should always be followed to reduce risk of fire, electric shock, and injury to persons:



CAUTION - CLASS 3B LASER RADIATION WHEN OPEN
AVOID EXPOSURE TO THE BEAM.

DANGER - LASER RADIATION AVOID DIRECT
EXPOSURE TO BEAM.

DANGER - RADIATIONS INVISIBLES DU LASER EN CAS
D'OUVERTURE. EVITER TOUTE EXPOSITION
DIRECTE AU FAISCEAU.

VORSICHT - UNSICHTBARE LASERSTRÄHLUNG, WENN
ABDECKUNG GEÖFFNET.
NICHT DEM STRAHL AUSSETZEN.

ATTENZIONE - RADIAZIONE LASER INVISIBILE IN CASO DI
APERTURA. EVITARE L'ESPOSIZIONE AL FASCIO.

PRECAUCIÓN - RADIACIÓN LASER INVISIBLE CUANDO SE ABRE.
EVITAR EXPONERSE AL RAYO.

PERIGO - RADIAÇÃO LASER INVISÍVEL AO ABRIR. EVITE
EXPOSIÇÃO DIRECTA AO FEIXE.

GEVAAR - ONZICHTBARE LASERSTRALLEN BIJ GEOPENDE
KLEP. DEZE KLEP NIET OPENEN.

ADVARSEL - USYNLIG LASERSTRÅLING VED ÅBNING.
UNDGÅ UDSAETTELSE FOR STRÅLING.

ADVARSEL - USYNLIG LASERSTRÅLING NÅR DEKSEL
ÅPNES. UNNGÅ EKSPOSERING FOR STRÅLEN.

VARNING - OSYNLIG LASERSTRÅLING NÄR DENNA DEL
ÄR ÖPPEN. STRÅLEN ÄR FARLIG.

VAROITUS - NÄKYMÄTÖNTÄ LASERSÄTEILYÄ AVATTAESSA.
VARO SUORAA ALTISTUMISTA SÄTEELLE.

注 意 - 严禁揭开此盖, 以免激光泄露灼伤

주 의 - 이 덮개를 열면 레이저광에 노출될 수 있으므로
주의하십시오.

Regulatory information

Ozone safety



This product's ozone emission rate is under 0.1 ppm. Because ozone is heavier than air, keep the product in a place with good ventilation.

Mercury Safety



Contains Mercury, Dispose According to Local, State or Federal Laws.(U.S.A. only)

Power saver



This printer contains advanced energy conservation technology that reduces power consumption when it is not in active use.

When the printer does not receive data for an extended period of time, power consumption is automatically lowered.

ENERGY STAR and the ENERGY STAR mark are registered U.S. marks.

For more information on the ENERGY STAR program see <http://www.energystar.gov>

For ENERGY STAR certified models, the ENRGY STAR label will be on your machine. Check if your machine is ENERGY STAR certified.

Recycling



Recycle or dispose of the packaging material for this product in an environmentally responsible manner.

Regulatory information

China only

回收和再循环

为了保护环境，我公司已经为废弃的产品建立了回收和再循环系统。我们会为您提供回收同类废旧产品的服务。当您要废弃您正在使用的产品时，请您及时与授权耗材更换中心取得联系，我们会及时为您提供服务。

中国能效标识

| 型号 | 能效等级 | 典型能耗 (kW·h) |
|------------|------|-------------|
| SCX-3406W | | |
| SCX-3401 | 1 | 0.85 |
| SCX-3406 | | |
| SCX-3406HW | 1 | 0.95 |
| SCX-3401FH | | |

依据国家标准 : GB 25956-2010

Correct disposal of this product (Waste electrical & electronic equipment)

(Applicable in the european union and other european countries with separate collection systems)



This marking on the product, accessories or literature indicates that the product and its electronic accessories (e.g. charger, headset, USB cable) should not be disposed of with other household waste at the end of their working life. To prevent possible harm to the environment or human health from uncontrolled waste disposal, please separate these items from other s of waste and recycle them responsibly to promote the sustainable reuse of material resources.

Household users should contact either the retailer where they purchased this product, or their local government office, for details of where and how they can take these items for environmentally safe recycling.

Business users should contact their supplier and check the terms and conditions of the purchase contract. This product and its electronic accessories should not be mixed with other commercial wastes for disposal.

Regulatory information

(The United States of America only)

Dispose unwanted electronics through an approved recycler. To find the nearest recycling location, go to our website: www.samsung.com/recyclingdirect Or call, (877) 278 - 0799

Taiwan only

警 告

本電池如果更換不正確會有爆炸的危險
請依製造商說明書處理用過之電池

Radio frequency emissions

FCC information to the user

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or experienced radio TV technician for help.



Change or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Regulatory information

Canadian radio interference regulations

This digital apparatus does not exceed the Class B limits for radio noise emissions from digital apparatus as set out in the interference-causing equipment standard entitled "Digital Apparatus", ICES-003 of the Industry and Science Canada.

Cet appareil numérique respecte les limites de bruits radioélectriques applicables aux appareils numériques de Classe B prescrites dans la norme sur le matériel brouilleur: "Appareils Numériques", ICES-003 édictée par l'Industrie et Sciences Canada.

United States of America

Federal Communications Commission (FCC)

Intentional emitter per FCC Part 15

Low power, Radio LAN devices (radio frequency (RF) wireless communication devices), operating in the 2.4 GHz/5 GHz Band, may be present (embedded) in your printer system. This section is only applicable if these devices are present. Refer to the system label to verify the presence of wireless devices.

Wireless devices that may be in your system are only qualified for use in the United States of America if an FCC ID number is on the system label.

The FCC has set a general guideline of 20 cm (8 inches) separation between the device and the body, for use of a wireless device near the body (this does not include extremities). This device should be used more than 20 cm (8 inches) from the body when wireless devices are on. The power output of the wireless device (or devices), which may be embedded in your printer, is well below the RF exposure limits as set by the FCC.

This transmitter must not be collocated or operation in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Operation of this device is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.



Wireless devices are not user serviceable. Do not modify them in any way. Modification to a wireless device will void the authorization to use it. Contact manufacturer for service.

Regulatory information

FCC Statement for Wireless LAN use:



While installing and operating this transmitter and antenna combination the radio frequency exposure limit of 1m W/cm² may be exceeded at distances close to the antenna installed. Therefore, the user must maintain a minimum distance of 20cm from the antenna at all times. This device cannot be colocated with another transmitter and transmitting antenna.

Russia only

AB57



Минсвязи России



Germany only

Das Gerät ist nicht für die Benutzung am Bildschirmarbeitsplatz gemäß BildscharbV vorgesehen.

Turkey only

- RoHS

EEE Yönetmeliğine Uygundur.
This EEE is compliant with RoHS.

- Bu ürünün ortalama yaşam süresi 7 yıl, garanti süresi 2 yıldır.

Canada only

This product meets the applicable Industry Canada technical specifications. / Le présent matériel est conforme aux spécifications techniques applicables d'Industrie Canada.

Regulatory information

The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is an indication of the maximum number of devices allowed to be connected to a telephone interface. The termination of an interface may consist of any combination of devices subject only to the requirement that the sum of the RENs of all the devices not exceed five. / L'indice d'équivalence de la sonnerie (IES) sert à indiquer le nombre maximal de terminaux qui peuvent être raccordés à une interface téléphonique. La terminaison d'une interface peut consister en une combinaison quelconque de dispositifs, à la seule condition que la somme d'indices d'équivalence de la sonnerie de tous les dispositifs n'excède pas cinq.

The Telephone Company may make changes in its communications facilities, equipment operations or procedures where such action is reasonably required in the operation of its business and is not inconsistent with the rules and regulations in FCC Part 68. If such changes can be reasonably expected to render any customer terminal equipment incompatible with telephone company communications facilities, or require modification or alteration of such terminal equipment, or otherwise materially affect its use or performance, the customer shall be given adequate notice in writing, to allow the customer an opportunity to maintain uninterrupted service

Fax Branding

The Telephone Consumer Protection Act of 1991 makes it unlawful for any person to use a computer or other electronic device to send any message via a telephone facsimile machine unless such message clearly contains in a margin at the top or bottom of each transmitted page or on the first page of the transmission the following information:

- 1 the date and time of transmission
- 2 identification of either business, business entity or individual sending the message; and
- 3 telephone number of either the sending machine, business, business entity or individual.

Ringer Equivalence Number

The Ringer Equivalence Number and FCC Registration Number for this machine may be found on the label located on the bottom or rear of the machine. In some instances you may need to provide these numbers to the telephone company.

The Ringer Equivalence Number (REN) is a measure of the electrical load placed on the telephone line, and is useful for determining whether you have "overloaded" the line. Installing several pieces of equipment on the same telephone line may result in problems making and receiving telephone calls, especially ringing when your line is called. The sum of all Ringer Equivalence Numbers of the equipment on your telephone line should be less than five in order to assure proper service from the telephone company. In some cases, a sum of five may not be usable on your line. If any of your telephone equipment is not operating properly, you should immediately remove it from your telephone line, as it may cause harm to the telephone network.

Regulatory information

The equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules and the requirements adopted by the ACTA. On the rear of this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, a product identifier in the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. If requested, this number must be provided to the telephone company.



FCC Regulations state that changes or modifications to this equipment not expressly approved by the manufacturer could void the user's authority to operate this equipment. In the event that terminal equipment causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company should notify the customer that service may be stopped. However, where prior notice is impractical, the company may temporarily cease service, providing that they:

- a promptly notify the customer.
- b give the customer an opportunity to correct the equipment problem.
- c inform the customer of the right to bring a complaint to the Federal Communication Commission pursuant to procedures set out in FCC Rules and Regulations Subpart E of Part 68.

You should also know that:

- Your machine is not designed to be connected to a digital PBX system.
- If you intend to use a computer modem or fax modem on the same phone line as your machine, you may experience transmission and reception problems with all the equipment. It is recommended that no other equipment, except for a regular telephone, share the line with your machine.

- If your area experiences a high incidence of lightning or power surges, we recommend that you install surge protectors for both the power and the telephone lines. Surge protectors can be purchased from your dealer or telephone and electronic specialty stores.
- When programming emergency numbers and/or making test calls to emergency numbers, use a non-emergency number to advise the emergency service dispatcher of your intentions. The dispatcher will give you further instructions on how to actually test the emergency number.
- This machine may not be used on coin service or party lines.
- This machine provides magnetic coupling to hearing aids.

You may safely connect this equipment to the telephone network by means of a standard modular jack, USOC RJ-11C.

Replacing the Fitted Plug (for UK Only)

Important

The mains lead for this machine is fitted with a standard (BS 1363) 13 amp plug and has a 13 amp fuse. When you change or examine the fuse, you must re-fit the correct 13 amp fuse. You then need to replace the fuse cover. If you have lost the fuse cover, do not use the plug until you have another fuse cover.

Contact the people from you purchased the machine.

Regulatory information

The 13 amp plug is the most widely used in the UK and should be suitable. However, some buildings (mainly old ones) do not have normal 13 amp plug sockets. You need to buy a suitable plug adaptor. Do not remove the moulded plug.



If you cut off the moulded plug, get rid of it straight away.

You cannot rewire the plug and you may receive an electric shock if you plug it into a socket.

Important warning:



You must earth this machine.

The wires in the mains lead have the following color code:

- **Green and Yellow:** Earth
- **Blue:** Neutral
- **Brown:** Live

If the wires in the mains lead do not match the colors marked in your plug, do the following:

You must connect the green and yellow wire to the pin marked by the letter "E" or by the safety 'Earth symbol' or colored green and yellow or green.

You must connect the blue wire to the pin which is marked with the letter "N" or colored black.

You must connect the brown wire to the pin which is marked with the letter "L" or colored red.

You must have a 13 amp fuse in the plug, adaptor, or at the distribution board.

Declaration of conformity (European countries)

Approvals and Certifications

Hereby, Samsung Electronics, declares that this [SCX-340x Series] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Low Voltage Directive (2006/95/EC), EMC Directive (2004/108/EC).



Hereby, Samsung Electronics, declares that this [SCX-340xW Series/SCX-340xF Series/SCX-340xFH Series/SCX-340xFW Series/SCX-340xHW Series] is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC.

The declaration of conformity may be consulted at www.samsung.com, go to Support > Download center and enter your printer (MFP) name to browse the EuDoC.

January 1, 1995: Council Directive 2006/95/EC Approximation of the laws of the member states related to low voltage equipment.

January 1, 1996: Council Directive 2004/108/EC, approximation of the laws of the Member States related to electromagnetic compatibility.

Regulatory information

March 9, 1999: Council Directive 1999/5/EC on radio equipment and telecommunications terminal equipment and the mutual recognition of their conformity. A full declaration, defining the relevant Directives and referenced standards can be obtained from your Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. representative.

EC Certification

Certification to 1999/5/EC Radio Equipment & Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive (FAX)

This Samsung product has been self-certified by Samsung for pan-European single terminal connection to the analogue public switched telephone network (PSTN) in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC. The product has been designed to work with the national PSTNs and compatible PBXs of the European countries:

In the event of problems, you should contact the Euro QA Lab of Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. in the first instance.

The product has been tested against TBR21. To assist in the use and application of terminal equipment which complies with this standard, the European Telecommunication Standards Institute (ETSI) has issued an advisory document (EG 201 121) which contains notes and additional requirements to ensure network compatibility of TBR21 terminals. The product has been designed against, and is fully compliant with, all of the relevant advisory notes contained in this document.

European radio approval information (for products fitted with EU-approved radio devices)

Low power, Radio LAN type devices (radio frequency (RF) wireless communication devices), operating in the 2.4 GHz/5 GHz band, may be present (embedded) in your printer system which is intended for home or office use. This section is only applicable if these devices are present. Refer to the system label to verify the presence of wireless devices.



Wireless devices that may be in your system are only qualified for use in the European Union or associated areas if a CE mark with a Notified Body Registration Number and the Alert Symbol is on the system label.

The power output of the wireless device or devices that may be embedded in your printer is well below the RF exposure limits as set by the European Commission through the R&TTE directive.

European states qualified under wireless approvals:

EU countries

European states with restrictions on use:

EU

In France, the frequency range is restricted to 2454-2483.5 MHz for devices above 10 mW transmitting power such as wireless

EEA/EFTA countries

Regulatory information

No limitations at this time

Israel only

מספר אישור אלחוטי של משרד התקשרות הוא 51-28466
אסור להחליפ את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר,
ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

Regulatory compliance statements

Wireless guidance

Low power, Radio LAN devices (radio frequency (RF) wireless communication devices), operating in the 2.4 GHz/5 GHz Band, may be present (embedded) in your printer system. The following section is a general overview of considerations while operating a wireless device.

Additional limitations, cautions, and concerns for specific countries are listed in the specific country sections (or country group sections). The wireless devices in your system are only qualified for use in the countries identified by the Radio Approval Marks on the system rating label. If the country you will be using the wireless device in, is not listed, contact your local Radio Approval agency for requirements. Wireless devices are closely regulated and use may not be allowed.

The power output of the wireless device or devices that may be embedded in your printer is well below the RF exposure limits as known at this time. Because the wireless devices (which may be embedded into your printer) emit less energy than is allowed in radio frequency safety standards and recommendations, manufacturer believes these devices are safe for use. Regardless of the power levels, care should be taken to minimize human contact during normal operation.

As a general guideline, a separation of 20 cm (8 inches) between the wireless device and the body, for use of a wireless device near the body (this does not include extremities) is typical. This device should be used more than 20 cm (8 inches) from the body when wireless devices are on and transmitting.

This transmitter must not be collocated or operation in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Some circumstances require restrictions on wireless devices. Examples of common restrictions are listed below:



Radio frequency wireless communication can interfere with equipment on commercial aircraft. Current aviation regulations require wireless devices to be turned off while traveling in an airplane. IEEE 802.11 (also known as wireless Ethernet) and Bluetooth communication devices are examples of devices that provide wireless communication.

Regulatory information



In environments where the risk of interference to other devices or services is harmful or perceived as harmful, the option to use a wireless device may be restricted or eliminated. Airports, Hospitals, and Oxygen or flammable gas laden atmospheres are limited examples where use of wireless devices may be restricted or eliminated. When in environments where you are uncertain of the sanction to use wireless devices, ask the applicable authority for authorization prior to use or turning on the wireless device.



Every country has different restrictions on the use of wireless devices. Since your system is equipped with a wireless device, when traveling between countries with your system, check with the local Radio Approval authorities prior to any move or trip for any restrictions on the use of a wireless device in the destination country.



If your system came equipped with an internal embedded wireless device, do not operate the wireless device unless all covers and shields are in place and the system is fully assembled.



Wireless devices are not user serviceable. Do not modify them in any way. Modification to a wireless device will void the authorization to use it. Contact manufacturer for service.



Only use drivers approved for the country in which the device will be used. See the manufacturer System Restoration Kit, or contact manufacturer Technical Support for additional information.

Regulatory information

China only

产品中有毒有害物质或元素的名称及含量

| 部件名称 | 有毒有害物质或元素 | | | | | |
|----------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|----------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| | 铅 (Pb) | 汞 (Hg) | 镉 (Cd) | 六价铬 (Cr ⁶⁺) | 多溴联苯 (PBB) | 多溴联苯醚 (PBDE) |
| 塑料 | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| 金属(机箱) | × | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| 印刷电路部件(PCA) | × | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| 电缆/连接器 | × | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| 电源设备 | × | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| 电源线 | × | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| 机械部件 | × | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| 卡盒部件 | × | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| 定影部件 | × | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| 扫描仪部件-CCD(如果有) | × | × | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| 扫描仪部件-其它(如果有) | × | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| 印刷电路板部件(PBA) | × | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| 墨粉 | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |
| 滚筒 | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ | ○ |

○：表示该有毒有害物质在该部件所有均质材料中的含量均在 SJ/T 11363-2006 标准规定的限量要求以下。

×：表示该有毒有害物质至少在该部件的某一均质材料中的含量超出 SJ/T 11363-2006 标准规定的限量要求。

以上表为目前本产品含有有毒有害物质的信息。本信息由本公司的配套厂家提供，经本公司审核后而做成，本产品的部分部件含有有毒有害物质，这些部件是在现有科学技术水平下暂时无可替代物质，但三星电子将会一直为满足 SJ/T 11363-2006 标准而做不懈的努力。

Copyright

© 2011 Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

This user's guide is provided for information purposes only. All information included herein is subject to change without notice.

Samsung Electronics is not responsible for any direct or indirect damages, arising from or related to use of this user's guide.

- Samsung and the Samsung logo are trademarks of Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.
- Microsoft, Windows, Windows Vista, Windows 7, and Windows Server 2008 R2 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.
- True, LaserWriter, and Macintosh are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc.
- All other brand or product names are trademarks of their respective companies or organizations.

Refer to the '**LICENSE.txt**' file in the provided CD-ROM for the open source license information.

REV. 1.03

User's Guide

SCX-340x/340xW Series

SCX-340xF/340xFW Series

SCX-340xFH/340xHW Series

ADVANCED

This guide provides information about installation, advanced configuration, operation and troubleshooting on various OS environments.

Some features may not be available depending on models or countries.

BASIC

This guide provides information concerning installation, basic operation and troubleshooting on windows.



1. Software Installation

| | |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Installation for Macintosh | 134 |
| Reinstallation for Macintosh | 135 |
| Installation for Linux | 136 |
| Reinstallation for Linux | 138 |



2. Using a Network-Connected

| | |
|---|-----|
| Useful network programs | 140 |
| Wired network setup | 141 |
| Installing driver over the network | 144 |
| IPv6 configuration | 153 |
| Wireless network setup | 156 |
| Samsung MobilePrint | 188 |



3. Useful Setting Menus

| | |
|---|-----|
| Before you begin reading a chapter | 190 |
| Print menu | 191 |
| Copy menu | 192 |
| Fax menu | 199 |
| Scan menu | 203 |
| System setup | 205 |
| Admin setup | 217 |
| Custom setup | 218 |



4. Special Features

| | |
|--|-----|
| Altitude adjustment | 220 |
| Storing email address | 221 |
| Entering various characters | 223 |
| Setting up the fax address book | 224 |
| Registering authorized users | 227 |
| Printing features | 228 |
| Scan features | 243 |
| Fax features | 254 |
| Using shared folder features | 265 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Using memory/hard drive features | 266 |
|---|-----|



5. Useful Management Tools

| | |
|--|-----|
| Easy Capture Manager | 268 |
| Samsung AnyWeb Print | 269 |
| Easy Eco Driver | 270 |
| Using SyncThru™ Web Service | 271 |
| Using Samsung Easy Printer Manager | 274 |
| Using Samsung Printer Status | 277 |
| Using Smart Panel | 279 |
| Using the Linux Unified Driver Configurator | 281 |



6. Troubleshooting

| | |
|--|-----|
| Paper feeding problems | 286 |
| Power and cable connecting problems | 287 |
| Printing problems | 288 |
| Printing quality problems | 292 |
| Copying problems | 300 |
| Scanning problems | 301 |
| Faxing problems | 303 |
| Operating system problems | 305 |



1. Software Installation

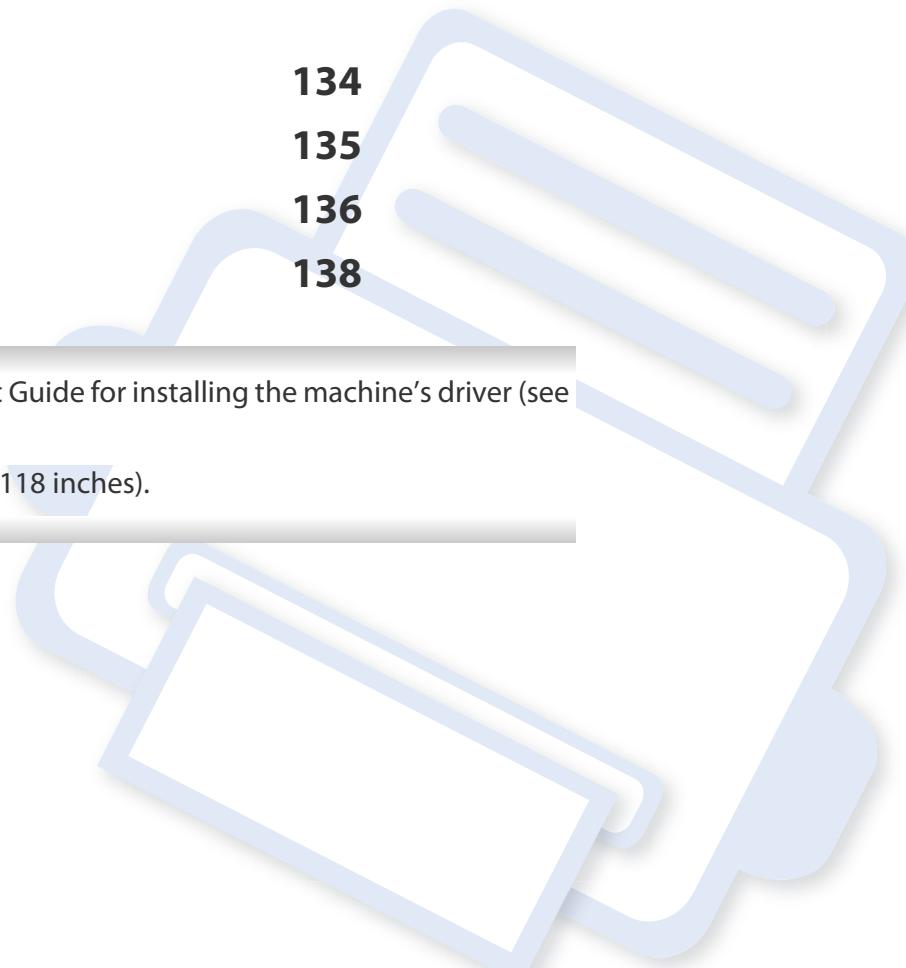
This chapter provides instructions for installing essential and helpful software for use in an environment where the machine is connected via a cable. A locally connected machine is a machine directly attached to your computer using the cable. If your machine is attached to a network, skip the following steps below and go on to installing a network connected machine's driver (see "Installing driver over the network" on page 144).

- **Installation for Macintosh**
- **Reinstallation for Macintosh**
- **Installation for Linux**
- **Reinstallation for Linux**



- If you are a Windows OS user, refer to the Basic Guide for installing the machine's driver (see "Installing the driver locally" on page 30).
 - Only use a USB cable no longer than 3 meters (118 inches).

134
135
136
138



Installation for Macintosh

- 1 Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
- 2 Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.
- 3 Double-click the CD-ROM icon that appears on your Macintosh desktop.
- 4 Double-click the **MAC_Installer** folder > **Installer OS X** icon.
- 5 Click **Continue**.
- 6 Read the license agreement and click **Continue**.
- 7 Click **Agree** to agree to the license agreement.
- 8 When the message that warns that all applications will close on your computer appears, click **Continue**.
- 9 Click **Continue** on the **User Options Pane**.
- 10 Click **Install**. All components necessary for machine operations will be installed.
If you click **Customize**, you can choose individual components to install.
- 11 Enter the password and click **OK**.
- 12 Installing software requires you to restart your computer. Click **Continue Installation**.
- 13 After the installation is finished, click **Quit** or **Restart**.
- 14 Open the **Applications** folder > **Utilities** > **Print Setup Utility**.
 - For Mac OS X 10.5 -10.7, open the **Applications** folder > **System Preferences** and click **Print & Fax**.
- 15 Click **Add** on the **Printer List**.
 - For Mac OS X 10.5 -10.7, click the "+" folder icon; a display window will pop up.
- 16 Click **Default Browser** and find the USB connection.
 - For Mac OS X 10.5-10.7, click **Default** and find the USB connection.
- 17 For Mac OS X 10.4, if Auto Select does not work properly, select **Samsung** in **Print Using** and your machine name in **Model**.
 - For Mac OS X 10.5-10.7, if Auto Select does not work properly, select **Select a driver to use...** and your machine name in **Print Using**.
Your machine appears on the **Printer List**, and is set as the default machine.
- 18 Click **Add**.



To install the fax driver:

- a Open the **Applications** folder > **Samsung** > **Fax Queue Creator**.
- b Your machine appears on the **Printer List**
- c Select machine to use and click **Create** button

Reinstallation for Macintosh

If the printer driver does not work properly, uninstall the driver and reinstall it.

- 1 Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
- 2 Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.
- 3 Double-click the CD-ROM icon that appears on your Macintosh desktop.
- 4 Double-click the **MAC_Installer** folder > **Uninstaller OS X** icon.
- 5 Enter the password and click **OK**.
- 6 When the uninstall is done, click **OK**.



If a machine has already been added, delete it from the **Print Setup Utility** or **Print & Fax**.

Installation for Linux

You need to download Linux software packages from the Samsung website to install the printer software (<http://www.samsung.com> > find your product > Support or Downloads).

Installing the Unified Linux Driver

- 1 Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
- 2 When the **Administrator Login** window appears, type “root” in the **Login** field and enter the system password.



You must log in as a super user (root) to install the machine software. If you are not a super user, ask your system administrator.

- 3 From the Samsung website, download the Unified Linux Driver package to your computer.
- 4 Right-click the **Unified Linux Driver** package and extract the package.
- 5 Double click **cdroot > autorun**.
- 6 When the welcome screen appears, click **Next**.
- 7 When the installation is complete, click **Finish**.

The installation program added the Unified Driver Configurator desktop icon and the Unified Driver group to the system menu for your convenience. If you have any difficulties, consult the on-screen help that is available through your system menu or from the driver package Windows applications, such as **Unified Driver Configurator** or **Image Manager**.

Installing the Smart Panel

- 1 Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
- 2 When the **Administrator Login** window appears, type in root in the **Login** field and enter the system password.



You must log in as a super user (root) to install the machine software. If you are not a super user, ask your system administrator.

- 3 From the Samsung website, download the **Smart Panel** package to your computer.
- 4 Right-click the Smart Panel package and extract the package.
- 5 Double click **cdroot > Linux > smartpanel > install.sh**.

Installation for Linux

Installing the Printer Settings Utility

- 1** Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
- 2** When the **Administrator Login** window appears, type "root" in the **Login** field and enter the system password.



You must log in as a super user (root) to install the machine software. If you are not a super user, ask your system administrator.

- 3** From the Samsung website, download the Printer Settings Utility package to your computer.
- 4** Right-click the **Printer Settings Utility** package and extract the package.
- 5** Double click **cdroot > Linux > psu > install.sh**.

Reinstallation for Linux

If the printer driver does not work properly, uninstall the driver and reinstall it.

1 Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.

2 When the **Administrator Login** window appears, type “root” in the **Login** field and enter the system password.

You must log in as a super user (root) to uninstall the printer driver. If you are not a super user, ask your system administrator.

3 Click the icon at the bottom of the desktop. When the Terminal screen appears, type in the following.

```
[root@localhost root]#cd /opt/Samsung/mfp/uninstall/
```

```
[root@localhost uninstall]#./uninstall.sh
```

4 Click **Uninstall**.

5 Click **Next**.

6 Click **Finish**.



2. Using a Network-Connected Machine

This chapter gives you step-by-step instructions for setting up a network connected machine and software.

- **Useful network programs**
- **Wired network setup**
- **Installing driver over the network**
- **IPv6 configuration**
- **Wireless network setup**
- **Samsung MobilePrint**

140

141

144

153

156

188



Supported optional devices and features may differ according to your model (see "Features by models" on page 7).

Useful network programs

There are several programs available to setup the network settings easily in a network environment. For the network administrator especially, managing several machines on the network is possible.



- Before using the programs below, set the IP address first.
- Some features and optional goods may not be available depending on model or country (see "Features by models" on page 7).

SyncThru™ Web Service

The web server embedded on your network machine allows you to do the following tasks (see "Using SyncThru™ Web Service" on page 271).

- Check the supplies information and status.
- Customize machine settings.
- Set the email notification option. When you set this option, the machine status (toner cartridge shortage or machine error) will be sent to a certain person's email automatically.
- Configure the network parameters necessary for the machine to connect to various network environments.

SyncThru™ Web Admin Service

Web-based machine management solution for network administrators.

SyncThru™ Web Admin Service provides you with an efficient way of managing network devices and lets you remotely monitor and troubleshoot network machines from any site with corporate internet access.

- Download this program from <http://solution.samsungprinter.com>.

SetIP wired network setup

This utility program allows you to select a network interface and manually configure the IP addresses for use with the TCP/IP protocol.

- See "IPv4 configuration using SetIP (Windows)" on page 141.
- See "IPv4 configuration using SetIP (Macintosh)" on page 142.
- See "IPv4 configuration using SetIP (Linux)" on page 143.



- The machine that does not support the network port, it will not be able to use this feature (see "Rear view" on page 23).
- TCP/IPv6 is not supported by this program.

Wired network setup

Printing a network configuration report

You can print **Network Configuration Report** from the machine's control panel that will show the current machine's network settings. This will help you to set up a network.

- **The machine has the display screen:** Press the  (Menu) button on the control panel and select **Network > Network Conf. (Network Configuration)**.
- **The machine has the touch screen:** Press **Setup** from the **Main** screen > **Network > Next > Network Configuration**.
- **The machine does not have the display screen:** Press the  (Cancel or Stop/Clear) button for more than 4~5 seconds on the control panel.

Using this **Network Configuration Report**, you can find your machine's MAC address and IP address.

For example:

- MAC Address: 00:15:99:41:A2:78
- IP Address: 169.254.192.192

Setting IP address



- The machine that does not support the network interface, it will not be able to use this feature (see "Rear view" on page 23).
- TCP/IPv6 is not supported by this program.

First, you have to set up an IP address for network printing and managements. In most cases a new IP address will be automatically assigned by a DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) server located on the network.

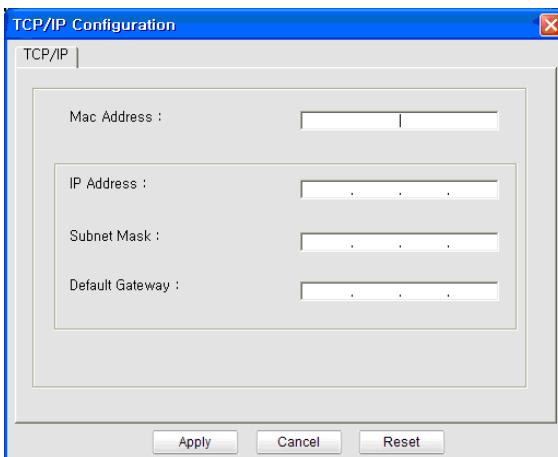
IPv4 configuration using SetIP (Windows)

Before using the SetIP program, disable the computer firewall from **Control Panel > Security Center > Windows Firewall**.

- 1 Install this program from the supplied CD-ROM by double-click **Application > SetIP > Setup.exe**.
- 2 Follow the instructions in the installation window.
- 3 Connect your machine to the network with a network cable.
- 4 Turn on the machine.
- 5 From the Windows **Start** menu, select **All Programs > Samsung Printers > SetIP > SetIP**.

Wired network setup

- 6 Click the  icon (third from left) in the SetIP window to open the TCP/IP configuration window.
- 7 Enter the machine's new information into the configuration window as follows. In a corporate intranet, you may need to have this information assigned by a network manager before proceeding.



Find the machine's MAC address from the **Network Configuration Report** (see "Printing a network configuration report" on page 141) and enter it without the colons. For example, 00:15:99:29:51:A8 becomes 0015992951A8.

- 8 Click **Apply**, and then click **OK**. The machine will automatically print the **Network Configuration Report**. Confirm that all the settings are correct.

IPv4 configuration using SetIP (Macintosh)

Before using the SetIP program, disable the computer firewall from **System Preferences > Security > Firewall**.



The following instructions may vary from your model.

- 1 Connect your machine to the network with a network cable.
- 2 Insert the Installation CD-ROM, and open the disk window, select **MAC_Installer > MAC_Printer > SetIP > SetIPapplet.html**.
- 3 Double-click the file and **Safari** will automatically open, then select **Trust**. The browser will open the **SetIPapplet.html** page that shows the printer's name and IP address information.
- 4 Click the  icon (third from left) in the SetIP window to open the TCP/IP configuration window.
- 5 Enter the machine's new information into the configuration window. In a corporate intranet, you may need to have this information assigned by a network manager before proceeding.

Wired network setup



Find the machine's MAC address from the **Network Configuration Report** (see "Printing a network configuration report" on page 141) and enter it without the colons. For example, 00:15:99:29:51:A8 becomes 0015992951A8.

- 6 Select **Apply**, then **OK**, and **OK** again.
- 7 Quit **Safari**.



Find the machine's MAC address from the **Network Configuration Report** (see "Printing a network configuration report" on page 141) and enter it without the colons. For example, 00:15:99:29:51:A8 becomes 0015992951A8.

- 5 The machine will automatically print the **Network Configuration Report**.

IPv4 configuration using SetIP (Linux)

Before using the SetIP program, disable the computer firewall from **System Preferences** or **Administrator**.



The following instructions may vary from your model or operating systems.

- 1 Open **/opt/Samsung/mfp/share/utils/**.
- 2 Double-click the **SetIApplet.html** file.
- 3 Click to open the TCP/IP configuration window.
- 4 Enter the machine's new information into the configuration window. In a corporate intranet, you may need to have this information assigned by a network manager before proceeding.

Installing driver over the network



- Some features and optional goods may not be available depending on model or country (see "Features by models" on page 7).
- The machine that does not support the network interface, it will not be able to use this feature (see "Rear view" on page 23).

Windows

1 Make sure that the machine is connected to the network and powered on. Also, your machine's IP address should have been set (see "Setting IP address" on page 141).

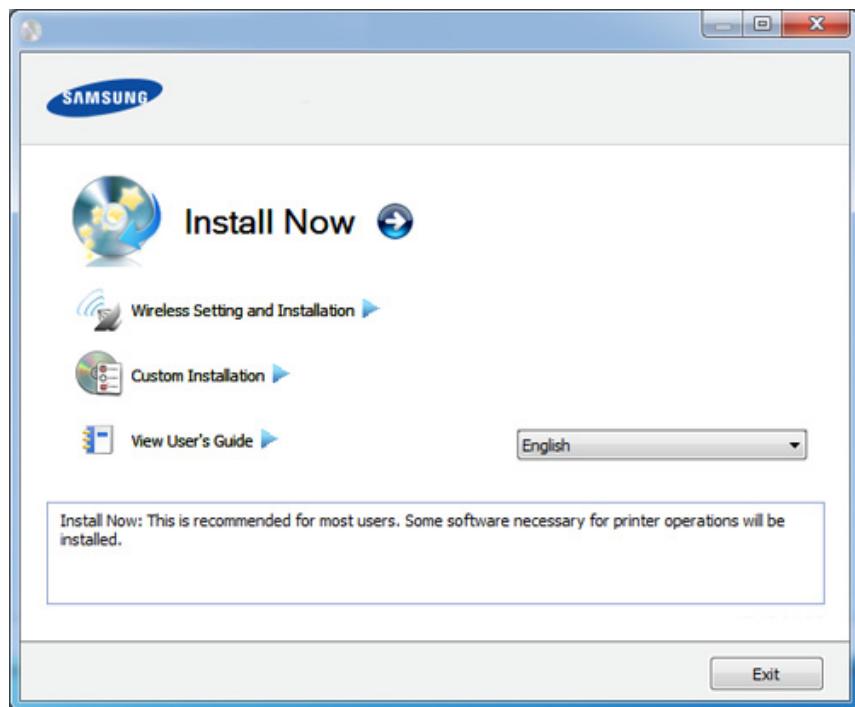


If the "**Found New Hardware Wizard**" appears during the installation procedure, click **Cancel** to close the window.

2 Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.

3

Select **Install Now**.



4

The **Custom Installation** allows you to select the machine's connection and choose individual components to install. Follow the instructions on the window.

Read **License Agreement**, and select **I accept the terms of the License Agreement**. Then, click **Next**.

The program searches for the machine.

Installing driver over the network



If your machine is not found on the network or locally, an error message appears. Select the option you want and click **Next**.

5

The searched machines will be shown on the screen. Select the one you wish to use and click **OK**.



If the driver searched only one machine, the confirmation window appears.

6

Follow the instructions in the installation window.

Silent installation Mode

Silent installation mode is an installation method that does not require any user intervention. Once you start the installation, the machine driver and software are automatically installed on your computer. You can start the silent installation by typing **/s** or **/S** in the command window.

Command-line Parameters

Following table shows commands that can be used in the command window.



Following command-line are effective and operated when command is used with **/s** or **/S**. But **/h**, **/H** or **/?** are exceptional commands that can be operated solely.

| Command-line | Definition | Description |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| /s or /S | Starts silent installation. | Installs machine drivers without prompting any UIs or user intervention. |
| /p"<port name>" or /P"<port name>" | Specifies printer port.  Network Port will be created by use of Standard TCP/IP Port monitor. For local port, this port must exist on system before being specified by command. | Printer port name can be specified as IP address, hostname, USB local port name or IEEE1284 port name. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• /p"xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx" in where, "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx" means IP address for network printer. /p"USB001", /P"LPT1:", /p"hostname"• When installing the driver silently in Korean, type in Setup.exe /s /L"0x0012" or Setup.exe /s. |

Installing driver over the network

| Command-line | Definition | Description | Command-line | Definition | Description |
|---|---|---|--|--|---|
| /a"<dest_path>" or /A"<dest_path>" | Specifies destination path for installation.  The destination path should be a fully qualified path. | Since machine drivers should be installed on the OS specific location, this command applies to only application software. | /n"<Printer name>" or /N"<Printer name>" | Specifies printer name. Printer instance shall be created as specified printer name. | With this parameter, you can add printer instances as your wishes. |
| /i"<scriptfilename>" or /I"<script filename>" | Specifies customized install script file for custom operation.  The script filename should be a fully qualified filename. | Customized script file can be assigned for customized silent installation. This script file can be created or modified through provided installer customizing utility or by text editor.  This customized script file is prior than default installer setting in setup package but not prior than command-line parameters. | /nd or /ND | Commands not to set the installed driver as a default machine driver. | It indicates installed machine driver will not be the default machine driver on your system if there are one or more printer drivers installed. If there is no installed machine driver on your system, then this option won't be applied because Windows OS will set installed printer driver as a default machine driver. |

Installing driver over the network

| Command-line | Definition | Description |
|--|---|---|
| /up"<printer name>" or /UP"<printer name>" | Removes only specified printer instance and not the driver files. | This command provides a way to remove only specified printer instance from your system without effecting other printer drivers. It will not remove printer driver files from your system. |
| /d or /D | Uninstalls all device drivers and applications from your system. | This command will remove all installed device drivers and application software from your system. |
| /v"<share name>" or /V"<share name>" | Shares installed machine and add other available platform drivers for Point & Print. | It will install all supported Windows OS platform's machine drivers to system and share it with specified <share name> for point and print. |
| /o or /O | Opens Printers and Faxes folder after installation. | This command will open Printers and Faxes folder after the silent installation. |
| /f"<log filename>" or /F"<log filename>" | Specifies log filename. The default log file is created in the system temp folder if not specified. | It will create a log file to a specified folder. |

| Command-line | Definition | Description |
|--------------|---------------------------|-------------|
| /h, /H or /? | Shows Command-line Usage. | |

Macintosh

- 1 Make sure that the machine is connected to your network and powered on.
- 2 Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.
- 3 Double-click the CD-ROM icon that appears on your Macintosh desktop.
- 4 Double-click the **MAC_Installer** folder > **Installer OS X** icon.
- 5 Click **Continue**.
- 6 Read the license agreement and click **Continue**.
- 7 Click **Agree** to agree to the license agreement.
- 8 When the message which warns that all applications will close on your computer appears, click **Continue**.
- 9 Click **Continue** on the **User Options Pane**.

Installing driver over the network



If you have not set the IP address yet, click Set IP address and refer to "IPv4 configuration using SetIP (Macintosh)" on page 142. If you want to set the wireless setting, refer to "Setup using Macintosh" on page 172.

10 Click **Install**. All components necessary for machine operations will be installed.

If you click **Customize**, you can choose individual components to install.

11 Enter the password and click **OK**.

12 Installing software requires you to restart your computer. Click **Continue Installation**.

13 After the installation is finished, click **Quit or Restart**.

14 Open the **Applications** folder > **Utilities** > **Print Setup Utility**.

- For Mac OS X 10.5-10.7, open the **Applications** folder > **System Preferences** and click **Print & Fax**.

15 Click **Add** on the **Printer List**.

- For Mac OS X 10.5-10.7, click the "+" icon. A display window will pop up.

16 For Mac OS X 10.4, click **IP Printer**.

- For Mac OS X 10.5-10.7, click **IP**.

17 Select **HP Jetdirect - Socket** in **Protocol**.



When printing a document containing many pages, printing performance may be enhanced by choosing **Socket** for **Printer Type** option.

18 Enter the machine's IP address in the **Address** input field.

19 Enter the queue name in the **Queue** input field. If you cannot determine the queue name for your machine server, try using the default queue first.

20 For Mac OS X 10.4, if Auto Select does not work properly, select **Samsung** in **Print Using** and your machine name in **Model**.

- For Mac OS X 10.5-10.7, if Auto Select does not work properly, choose **Select Printer Software** and your machine name in **Print Using**.

21 Click **Add**.

Your machine appears in the **Printer List**, and is set as the default machine.



To install the fax driver:

- Open the **Applications** folder > **Samsung** > **Fax Queue Creator**.
- Your machine appears on the **Printer List**.
- Select machine to use and Click **Create** button.

Installing driver over the network

Linux

You need to download Linux software packages from the Samsung website to install the printer software (<http://www.samsung.com> > find your product > Support or Downloads).



To install other software:

- See "Installing the Smart Panel" on page 136.
- See "Installing the Printer Settings Utility" on page 137.

Install the Linux driver and add network printer

- 1 Make sure that the machine is connected to your network and powered on. Also, your machine's IP address should have been set.
- 2 Download the Unified Linux Driver package from the Samsung website.
- 3 Extract the UnifiedLinuxDriver.tar.gz file and open the new directory.
- 4 Double-click the **Linux** folder > **install.sh** icon.
- 5 The Samsung installer window opens. Click **Continue**.
- 6 The add printer wizard window opens. Click **Next**.

- 7 Select network printer and click **Search** button.
- 8 The machine's IP address and model name appears on list field.
- 9 Select your machine and click **Next**.
- 10 Input the printer description and **Next**.
- 11 After the machine is added, click **Finish**.
- 12 When installation is done, click **Finish**.

Add a network printer

- 1 Double-click the **Unified Driver Configurator**.
- 2 Click **Add Printer**.
- 3 The **Add printer wizard** window opens. Click **Next**.
- 4 Select **Network printer** and click the **Search** button.
- 5 The printer's IP address and model name appears on list field.
- 6 Select your machine and click **Next**.
- 7 Enter the printer description and click **Next**.
- 8 After the machine is added, click **Finish**.

Installing driver over the network

UNIX



- Make sure your machine supports the UNIX operating system before installing the UNIX printer driver (see "Operating System" on page 7).
- The commands are marked with "", when typing the commands, do not type "".
- Some features and optional goods may not be available depending on model or country (see "Operating System" on page 7).

To use the UNIX printer driver, you have to install the UNIX printer driver package first, then setup the printer. You can download the UNIX printer driver package from the Samsung website ((<http://www.samsung.com> > find your product > Support or Downloads)).

Installing the UNIX printer driver package

The installation procedure is common for all variants of UNIX OS mentioned.

- 1 From the Samsung website, download and unpack the UNIX Printer Driver package to your computer.
- 2 Acquire root privileges.
`"su -"`
- 3 Copy the appropriate driver archive to the target UNIX computer.



See administration guide of your UNIX OS for details.

- 4 Unpack the UNIX printer driver package.
For example, on IBM AIX, use the following commands.
`"gzip -d < enter the package name | tar xf -"`
- 5 Go to the unpacked directory.
- 6 Run the install script.
`"./install"`
install is the installer script file which is used to install or uninstall the UNIX Printer Driver package.
Use "**chmod 755 install**" command to give the permission to the installer script.
- 7 Execute the `". ./install -c"` command to verify installation results.
- 8 Run "**installprinter**" from the command line. This will bring up the **Add Printer Wizard** window. Setup the printer in this window referring to the following procedures.

Installing driver over the network



On some UNIX OS, for example on Solaris 10, just added printers may not be enabled and/or may not accept jobs. In this case run the following two commands on the root terminal:

`"accept <printer_name>"`

`"enable <printer_name>"`

Uninstalling the printer driver package



The utility should be used to delete the printer installed in the system.

a Run "`uninstallprinter`" command from the terminal.

It will open the **Uninstall Printer Wizard**.

The installed printers are listed in the drop-down list.

b Select the printer to be deleted.

c Click **Delete** to delete the printer from the system.

d Execute the "`./install -d`" command to uninstall the whole package.

e To verify removal results, execute the "`./install -c`" command.

To re-install it, use the command "`./install`" to reinstall the binaries.

Setting up the printer

To add the printer to your UNIX system, run '`installprinter`' from the command line. This will bring up the Add Printer Wizard window. Setup the printer in this window according to the following steps:

- 1 Type the name of the printer.
- 2 Select the appropriate printer model from the model list.
- 3 Enter any description corresponding to the type of the printer in the **Type** field. This is optional.
- 4 Specify any printer description in the **Description** field. This is optional.
- 5 Specify the printer location in the **Location** field.
- 6 Type the IP address or DNS name of the printer in the **Device** textbox for network-connected printers. On IBM AIX with **jetdirect Queue type**, only the DNS name is possible-numeric IP address is not allowed.
- 7 **Queue type** shows the connection as **lpd** or **jetdirect** in the corresponding list box. Additionally, **usb** type is available on Sun Solaris OS.
- 8 Select **Copies** to set the number of copies.
- 9 Check the **Collate** option to receive copies already sorted.
- 10 Check the **Reverse Order** option to receive copies in the reverse order.

Installing driver over the network

11 Check the **Make Default** option to set this printer as default.

12 Click **OK** to add the printer.

IPv6 configuration



IPv6 is supported properly only in Windows Vista or higher.



- Some features and optional goods may not be available depending on model or country (see "Features by models" on page 7 or "Menu overview" on page 33).
- If the IPv6 network seems to not be working, set all the network setting to the factory defaults and try again using **Clear Setting**.

In the IPv6 network environment, follow the next procedure to use the IPv6 address.

From the control panel

- Connect your machine to the network with a network cable.
- Turn on the machine.
- Print a **Network Configuration Report** that will check IPv6 addresses (see "Printing a network configuration report" on page 141).
- Select **Start > Control Panel > Printers and Faxes**.
- Click **Add a printer** in the left pane of the **Printers and Faxes** windows.
- Click **Add a local printer** in the **Add Printer** windows.

7

The **Add Printer Wizard** window appears. Follow the instructions in the window.



If the machine does not work in the network environment, activate IPv6. Refer to the next section followed by.

Activating IPv6

- Press the (**Menu**) button on the control panel.
- Press **Network > TCP/IP (IPv6) > IPv6 Activate**.
- Select **On** and press **OK**.
- Turn the machine off and turn it on again.
- Reinstall your printer driver.

IPv6 configuration

Setting IPv6 addresses

The machine supports the following IPv6 addresses for network printing and managements.

- **Link-local Address:** Self-configured local IPv6 address (Address starts with FE80).
- **Stateless Address:** Automatically configured IPv6 address by a network router.
- **Stateful Address:** IPv6 address configured by a DHCPv6 server.
- **Manual Address:** Manually configured IPv6 address by a user.

DHCPv6 address configuration (Stateful)

If you have a DHCPv6 server on your network, you can set one of the following options for default dynamic host configuration.

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button on the control panel.
- 2 Press **Network > TCP/IP (IPv6) > DHCPv6 Config.**
- 3 Press **OK** to select the required value you want.
 - **DHCPv6 Addr.:** Always use DHCPv6 regardless of router request.
 - **DHCPv6 Off:** Never use DHCPv6 regardless of router request.
 - **Router:** Use DHCPv6 only when requested by a router.

From the SyncThru™ Web Service



For models that do not have the display screen on the control panel, you need to access **SyncThru™ Web Service** first using the IPv4 address and follow the below procedure to use IPv6.

- 1 Access a web browser, such as Internet Explorer, from Windows. Enter the machine IP address (<http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx>) in the address field and press the Enter key or click **Go**.
- 2 If it's your first time logging into **SyncThru™ Web Service** you need to log-in as an administrator. Type in the below default ID and password.
 - **ID: admin**
 - **Password: sec00000**
- 3 When the **SyncThru™ Web Service** window opens, move the mouse cursor over the **Settings** of the top menu bar and then click **Network Settings**.
- 4 Click **TCP/IPv6** on the left pane of the website.
- 5 Check the **IPv6 Protocol** check box to activate IPv6.
- 6 Check the **Manual Address** check box. Then, the **Address/Prefix** text box is activated.

IPv6 configuration

- 7 Enter the rest of the address (e.g.,**3FFE:10:88:194::AAAA**. "A" is the hexadecimal 0 through 9, A through F).
- 8 Choose the DHCPv6 configuration.
- 9 Click the **Apply** button.

Using SyncThru™ Web Service

- 1 Start a web browser, such as Internet Explorer, that supports IPv6 addressing as a URL.
- 2 Select one of the IPv6 addresses (**Link-local Address, Stateless Address, Stateful Address, Manual Address**) from **Network Configuration Report** (see "Printing a network configuration report" on page 141).
- 3 Enter the IPv6 addresses (e.g.,**http://[FE80::215:99FF:FE66:7701]**).



Address must be enclosed in '[]' brackets.

Wireless network setup

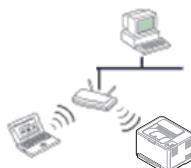


- Make sure your machine supports wireless networking. Wireless networking may not be available depending on the model (see "Features by models" on page 7).
- If the IPv6 network seems to not be working, set all the network settings to the factory defaults and try again using **Clear Setting**.

Getting started

Understanding your network type

Typically, you can only have one connection between your computer and the machine at a time.



Infrastructure mode

This is an environment generally used for homes and SOHOs (Small Office/ Home Office). This mode uses an access point to communicate with the wireless machine.



Ad hoc mode

This mode does not use an access point. The wireless computer and wireless machine communicate directly.

Wireless network name and network key

Wireless networks require higher security, so when an access point is first set up, a network name (SSID), the type of security used, and a Network Key are created for the network. Ask your network administrator about this information before proceeding with the machine installation.

Wireless network setup

Introducing wireless set up methods

You can set wireless settings either from the machine or the computer. Choose the setting method from the below table.



Some wireless network installation types may not be available depending on the model or country.

| Set up method | Connecting method | Description & Reference |
|---|--|--|
| From the machine's control panel  | Using the WPS (recommended) () | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• See "Machines with a display screen" on page 160.• See "Machines without a display screen" on page 161. |
| | Using the menu button () | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• See "Using the menu button" on page 162. |

Wireless network setup

| Set up method | Connecting method | Description & Reference |
|--|---|--|
| From the computer  | Access point via USB cable (recommended) () | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Windows user, see "Access point via USB cable" on page 163.• Macintosh user, see "Access point via USB cable" on page 172. |
| | Access point via WPS button (without a USB cable connection) ( , ) | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Windows user, see "Access point via WPS button (without a USB cable connection)" on page 167.• Macintosh user, see "Setting the access point using the WPS button" on page 176. |
| | Ad hoc via USB cable () | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Windows user, see "Ad hoc via USB cable" on page 169.• Macintosh user, see "Ad hoc via USB cable" on page 178. |
| | Using a network cable | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• See "Using a network cable" on page 180. |
| Other set up methods | Setting the Wi-Fi Direct for mobile printing | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• See "Setting up Wi-Fi Direct" on page 183. |



If problems occur during wireless set up or driver installation, refer to the troubleshooting chapter (see "Troubleshooting" on page 185).

Wireless network setup

Using the WPS button

If your machine and an access point (or wireless router) support Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS), you can easily configure the wireless network settings by pressing the  (WPS) button on the control panel without a computer.



- If you want to use the wireless network using the infrastructure mode, make sure that the network cable is disconnected from the machine. Using the **WPS (PBC)** button or entering the PIN from the computer to connect to the access point (or wireless router) varies depending on the access point (or wireless router) you are using. Refer to the user's guide of the access point (or wireless router) you are using.
- When using the WPS button to set the wireless network, security settings may change. To prevent this, lock the WPS option for the current wireless security settings. The option name may differ depending on the access point (or wireless router) you are using.

Items to prepare

- Check if the access point (or wireless router) supports Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS).
- Check if your machine supports Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS).
- Networked computer (PIN mode only)

Choosing your type

There are two methods available to connect your machine to a wireless network using the  (WPS) button on the control panel.

The **Push Button Configuration (PBC)** method allows you to connect your machine to a wireless network by pressing both the  (WPS) button on the control panel of your machine and the WPS (PBC) button on a Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ WPS-enabled access point (or wireless router) respectively.

The **Personal Identification Number (PIN)** method helps you connect your machine to a wireless network by entering the supplied PIN information on a Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ WPS-enabled access point (or wireless router).

Factory default in your machine is **PBC** mode, which is recommended for a typical wireless network environment.



You can change the WPS mode in control panel ( (Menu) > **Network** > **Wireless** > **OK** > **WPS Setting**).

Wireless network setup

Machines with a display screen

Connecting in PBC mode

- 1** Press and hold the  (WPS) button on the control panel for more than 2 seconds.

The machine starts waiting for up to two minutes until you press the WPS (PBC) button on the access point (or wireless router).

- 2** Press the **WPS (PBC)** button on the access point (or wireless router).

The messages are displayed on the display screen in the order below:

- a** **Connecting:** The machine is connecting to the access point (or wireless router).
- b** **Connected:** When the machine is successfully connected to the wireless network, the WPS LED light stays on.
- c** **AP SSID:** After completing the wireless network connection process, the AP's SSID information appears on the display.

Connecting in PIN mode

- 1** Press and hold the  (WPS) button on the control panel for more than 2 seconds.

- 2** The eight-digit PIN appears on the display.

You need to enter the eight-digit PIN within two minutes on the computer that is connected to the access point (or wireless router).

The messages are displayed on the display screen in the order below:

- a** **Connecting:** The machine is connecting to the wireless network.
- b** **Connected:** When the machine is successfully connected to the wireless network, the WPS LED light stays on.
- c** **SSID Type:** After completing the wireless network connection process, the AP's SSID information is displayed on the LCD display.

Wireless network setup

Machines without a display screen

Connecting in PBC mode

- 1 Press and hold the  (WPS) button on the control panel for about 2 - 4 seconds until the status LED blinks quickly.

The machine starts connecting to the wireless network. The LED blinks slowly for up to two minutes until you press the PBC button on the access point (or wireless router).

- 2 Press the **WPS (PBC)** button on the access point (or wireless router).
 - a The light blinks fast on the WPS LED. The machine is connecting to the access point (or wireless router).
 - b When the machine is successfully connected to the wireless network, the WPS LED light stays on.

Connecting in PIN mode

- 1 The network configuration report, including PIN, must be printed (see "Printing a network configuration report" on page 141).

In ready mode, press and hold the  (**Cancel** or **Stop/Clear**) button on the control panel for about 5 seconds. You can find your machine's PIN.

- 2 Press and hold the  (WPS) button on the control panel for more than 4 seconds until the status LED stays on.

The machine starts connecting to the access point (or wireless router).

- 3 You need to enter the eight-digit PIN within two minutes on the computer that is connected to the access point (or wireless router). The LED blinks slowly for up to two minutes until you enter the eight-digit PIN.

The WPS LED blinks in the order below:

 - a The light blinks fast on the WPS LED. The machine is connecting to the access point (or wireless router).
 - b When the machine is successfully connected to the wireless network, the WPS LED light stays on.

Re-connecting to a network

When the wireless function is off, the machine automatically tries to re-connect to the access point (or wireless router) with the previously used wireless connection settings and address.



In the following cases, the machine automatically re-connects to the wireless network:

- The machine is turned off and on again.
- The access point (or wireless router) is turned off and on again.

Wireless network setup

Canceling the connection process

To cancel the wireless network connection when the machine is connecting to the wireless network, press and release the  (Cancel or Stop/Clear) on the control panel. **You need to wait 2 minutes to re-connect to the wireless network.**

Disconnecting from a network

To disconnect the wireless network connection, press the  (WPS) button on the control panel for more than two seconds.

- **When the Wi-Fi network is in idle mode:** The machine is immediately disconnected from the wireless network and the WPS LED turns off.
- **When the Wi-Fi network is being used:** While the machine waits until the current job is finished, the light blinks fast on the WPS LED. Then, the wireless network connection is automatically disconnected and the WPS LED turns off.

Using the menu button



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

Before starting, you will need to know the network name (SSID) of your wireless network and the network key if it is encrypted. This information was set when the access point (or wireless router) was installed. If you do not know about your wireless environment, please ask the person who set up your network.



After completing the wireless network connection, you need to install a machine driver to print from an application (see "Installing driver over the network" on page 144).

- 1 Press the  (Menu) button on the control panel.
- 2 Press **Network > Wireless > WLAN Settings.**

Wireless network setup

3 Press the **OK** to select the setup method you want.

- **Wizard** (recommended): In this mode, the setup is automatic. The machine will display a list of available networks from which to choose. After a network is chosen then printer will prompt for the corresponding security key.
- **Custom:** In this mode, users can give or edit manually their own SSID , or choose the security option in detail.

Setup using Windows



Shortcut to the **Wireless Setting** program without the CD: If you have installed the printer driver once, you can access the **Wireless Setting** program without the CD. From the Start menu, select **Programs** or **All Programs > Samsung Printers > your printer driver name > Wireless Setting Program**.

Access point via USB cable

Items to prepare

- Access point
- Network-connected computer
- Software CD that was provided with your machine

- A machine installed with a wireless network interface
- USB cable

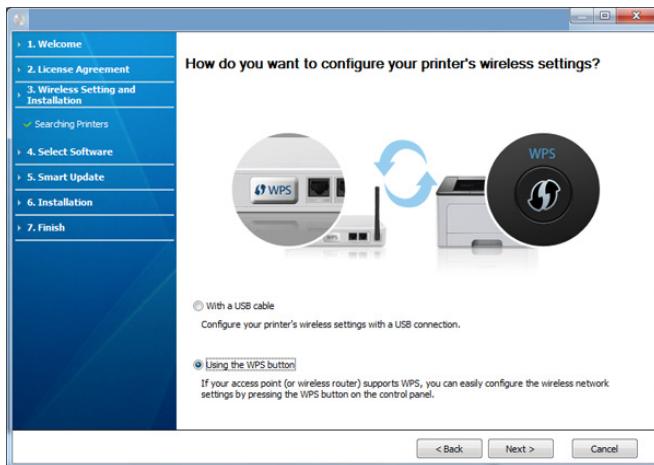
Creating the infrastructure network

- 1** Check whether the USB cable is connected to the machine.
- 2** Turn on your computer, access point, and machine.
- 3** Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.
- 4** Select the **Wireless Setting and Installation** option.
- 5** Read the **License Agreement**, and select **I accept the terms of the License Agreement**. Then, click **Next**.
- 6** The software searches the wireless network.
If the software has failed to search the network, check if the USB cable is connected properly between the computer and machine, and follow the instructions in the window.

Wireless network setup



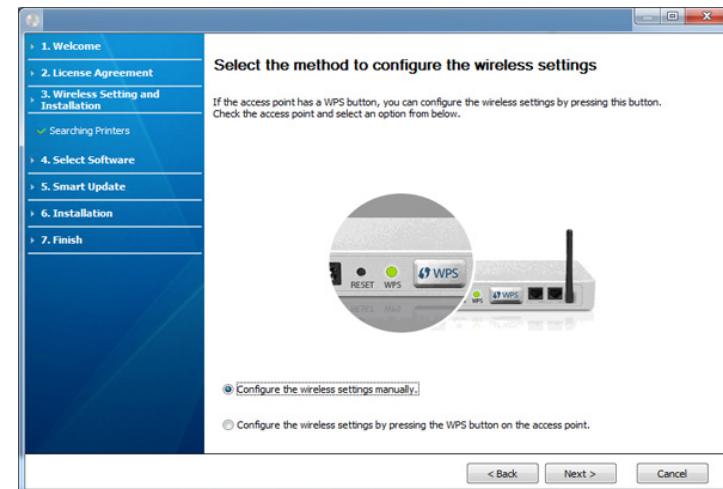
- If wireless network set up has been set before, the **Wireless Network Setting Information** window appears.
If you want to reset the wireless settings, check the check box and click **Next**.
- For models that support the WPS button (without a USB cable connection), the window shown below will appear.



- With a USB Cable:** Connect the USB cable and click **Next**, then go to step 7.
- Using the WPS button:** See "Access point via WPS button (without a USB cable connection)" on page 167.

7

Select the method to use from the wireless set up method window.



- Configure the wireless settings manually.:** Go to step 8.
 - Configure the wireless settings by pressing the WPS button on the access point.:** Connect to the wireless network by press the WPS button on the access point (or wireless router).
 - Follow the instructions in the window. When you are done configuring the wireless network settings, go to step 11.
- 8 After searching, the window shows the wireless network devices. Select the name (SSID) of the access point you are using and click **Next**.

Wireless network setup



If you cannot find the network name you want to choose, or if you want to set the wireless configuration manually, click **Advanced Setting**.

- **Enter the wireless Network Name:** Enter the SSID of the access point (SSID is case-sensitive).
- **Operation Mode:** Select **Infrastructure**.
- **Authentication:** Select an authentication type.
 - Open System:** Authentication is not used, and encryption may or may not be used, depending on the need for data security.
 - Shared Key:** Authentication is used. A device that has a proper WEP key can access the network.
 - WPA Personal or WPA2 Personal:** Select this option to authenticate the print server based on a WPA Pre-Shared Key. This uses a shared secret key (generally called Pre Shared Key pass phrase), which is manually configured on the access point and each of its clients.
- **Encryption:** Select the encryption (None, WEP64, WEP128, TKIP, AES, TKIP AES).
- **Network Key:** Enter the encryption network key value.
- **Confirm Network Key:** Confirm the encryption network key value.
- **WEP Key Index:** If you are using WEP Encryption, select the appropriate **WEP Key Index**.



The wireless network security window appears when the access point has security settings.

The wireless network security window appears. The window may differ according to its security mode: WEP or WPA.

- **WEP**

Select **Open System** or **Shared Key** for authentication and enter the WEP security key. Click **Next**.

WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) is a security protocol preventing unauthorized access to your wireless network. WEP encrypts the data portion of each packet exchanged on a wireless network using a 64-bit or 128-bit WEP encryption key.

- **WPA**

Enter the WPA shared key and click **Next**.

WPA authorizes and identifies users based on a secret key that changes automatically at regular intervals. WPA also uses TKIP (Temporal Key Integrity Protocol) and AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) for data encryption.

Wireless network setup

9 The window shows the wireless network settings and checks if the settings are correct. Click **Next**.

- For the DHCP method

If the IP address assignment method is DHCP, check if DHCP is shown in the window. If it shows Static, click **Change TCP/IP** to change the assignment method to DHCP.

- For the Static method

If the IP address assignment method is Static, check if Static is shown in the window. If it shows DHCP, click **Change TCP/IP** to enter the IP address and other network configuration values for the machine.

Before entering the IP address for the machine, you must know the computer's network configuration information. If the computer is set to DHCP, you must contact the network administrator to get the static IP address.

For example,

If the computer's network information is as shown below,

- IP address: 169.254.133.42
- Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0

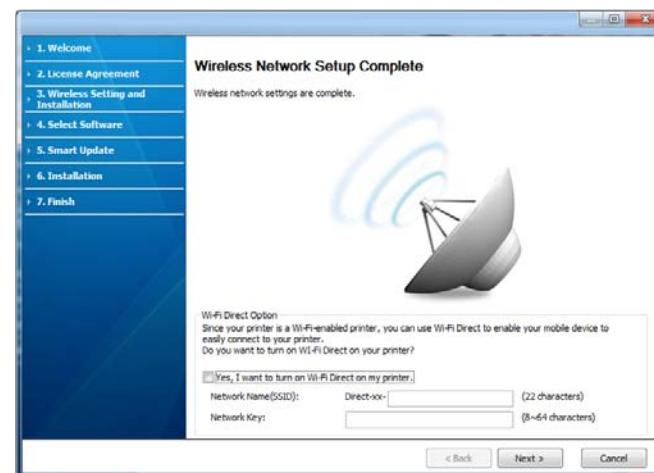
Then, the machine's network information should be as follows:

- IP address: 169.254.133.**43**
- Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0 (Use the computer's subnet mask.)
- Gateway: 169.254.133.**1**

10 When the window that tells you that the network cable connection is confirmed appears, disconnect the network cable and click **Next**.

If the network cable is connected, it may have trouble finding the machine when configuring the wireless network.

11 Wireless network setting is completed. To print from a Wi-Fi Direct supported mobile device, set the Wi-Fi Direct Option (see "Setting up Wi-Fi Direct" on page 183).



Wi-Fi Direct Option:

- Wi-Fi Direct option appears on the screen only if your printer supports this feature.
- Can start to build Wi-Fi Direct by using Samsung Easy Printer Manager (see "Setting up Wi-Fi Direct" on page 183).

Wireless network setup

- **Network Name(SSID):** The default Network Name is the model name and the maximum length is 22 characters (not including "Direct-xx-").
- **Network Key** is the numeric string, and the size is 8 ~ 64 characters.

- 12** When the wireless network set up is completed, disconnect the USB cable between the computer and machine. Click **Next**.
- 13** Click **Next** when the **Confirm Printer Connection** window appears.
- 14** Select the components to be installed. Click **Next**.
- 15** After selecting the components, you can also change the machine name, set the machine to be shared on the network, set the machine as the default machine, and change the port name of each machine. Click **Next**.
- 16** After installation is finished, a window asking you to print a test page appears. If you want to print a test page, click **Print a test page**. Otherwise, just click **Next** and go to step 18.
If the test page prints out correctly, click **Yes**. If not, click **No** to reprint it.
- 18** If you want to register your machine with the Samusng web site and receive useful information, click **On-line Registration**. If not, click **Finish**.

Access point via WPS button (without a USB cable connection)

For models that have a WPS button, you can set the wireless network using the WPS button (without a USB connection) and access point (or a router) WPS button.

Items to prepare

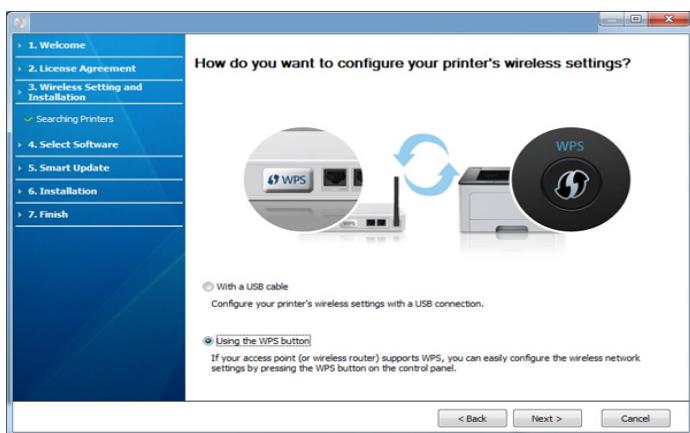
- Access point (or wireless router)
- Network-connected computer
- Software CD that was provided with your machine
- The machine installed with a wireless network interface

Creating the infrastructure network

- 1** Turn on your computer, access point, and machine.
- 2** Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.
- 3** Select the **Wireless Setting and Installation** option.
- 4** Read the **License Agreement**, and select **I accept the terms of the License Agreement**. Then, click **Next**.

Wireless network setup

5 Select **Using the WPS button** and click **Next**.



- For models that support WPS button, the above window appears.
- If your machine is connected with a USB cable, the above window does not appear. Disconnect the USB cable if you want to set up the wireless network using the WPS button.
- If you want to set up the wireless network using the USB cable, refer to "Access point via USB cable" on page 163.

6 The next window asks you to check if your access point (or wireless router) supports WPS or not.

If the access point (or wireless router) has a WPS button, select **Yes** and click **Next**.

7 Follow the instructions on the window to set up the wireless network.

- For models with a display screen, follow the steps below.
 - Press and hold the (WPS) button on the control panel for about 2-4 seconds. The machine waits up to 2 minutes for the WPS button on the access point (or a router) to be pressed.
 - Press the **WPS (PBC)** button on the access point (or wireless router).

The messages are displayed on the display screen in the order below:

- Connecting:** The machine is connecting to the access point (or wireless router).
- Connected:** When the machine is successfully connected to the wireless network, the WPS LED light stays on.

Wireless network setup

- **SSID Type:** After completing the wireless network connection process, the AP's SSID information appears on the display.
- For models without a display screen, follow the steps below.
 - a Press and hold the  (WPS) button on the control panel for about 2 - 4 seconds until the status LED blinks quickly.

The machine starts connecting to the wireless network. The LED blinks slowly for up to two minutes until you press the PBC button on the access point (or wireless router).
 - b Press the **WPS (PBC)** button on the access point (or wireless router).
 - The light blinks fast on the WPS LED while it is connecting to the access point (or wireless router).
 - When the machine is successfully connected to the wireless network, the WPS LED light stays on.

- 8 The **Wireless Network Setting Complete** window appears. Click **Next**.
- 9 Click **Next** when the **Confirm Printer Connection** window appears.
- 10 Select the components to be installed. Click **Next**.
- 11 After selecting the components, you can also change the machine name, set the machine to be shared on the network, set the machine as the default machine, and change the port name of each machine. Click **Next**.

- 12 After the installation is finished, a window asking you to print a test page appears. If you want to print a test page, click **Print a test page**. Otherwise, just click **Next** and go to step 14.
- 13 If the test page prints out correctly, click **Yes**. If not, click **No** to reprint it.
- 14 If you want to register your machine with the Samusng web site and receive useful information, click **On-line Registration**. If not, click **Finish**.

Ad hoc via USB cable

If you do not have an access point (AP), you may still connect the machine wirelessly to your computer by setting up an ad-hoc wireless network by following the simple steps below.

Items to prepare

- Network-connected computer
- Software CD that was provided with your machine
- A machine installed with a wireless network interface
- USB cable

Wireless network setup

Creating the ad hoc network in Windows

- 1 Check whether the USB cable is connected to the machine.
- 2 Turn on your computer and the wireless network machine.
- 3 Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.
- 4 Select the **Wireless Setting and Installation** option.
- 5 Read the **License Agreement**, and select **I accept the terms of the License Agreement**. Then, click **Next**.
- 6 The software searches the wireless network.



If the software has failed to search the network, check if the USB cable is connected properly between the computer and machine, and follow the instructions in the window.

- 7 After searching the wireless networks, a list of wireless networks your machine has searched appears.

If you want to use the Samsung default ad hoc setting, select the last wireless network on the list, **Network Name(SSID)** is **Portthru** and **Signal is Printer Self Network**.

Then, click **Next**.

If you want to use other ad hoc settings, select another wireless network from the list.



If you want to change the ad hoc settings, click the **Advanced Setting** button.

- **Enter the wireless Network Name:** Enter the SSID name you want (SSID is case-sensitive).
- **Operation Mode:** Select ad hoc.
- **Channel:** Select the channel. (**Auto Setting** or 2412 MHz to 2467 MHz).
- **Authentication:** Select an authentication type.
Open System: Authentication is not used, and encryption may or may not be used, depending on the need for data security.
Shared Key: Authentication is used. A device that has a proper WEP key can access the network.
- **Encryption:** Select the encryption (None, WEP64, WEP128).
- **Network Key:** Enter the encryption network key value.
- **Confirm Network Key:** Confirm the encryption network key value.
- **WEP Key Index:** If you are using WEP Encryption, select the appropriate **WEP Key Index**.

The wireless network security window appears when the ad hoc network has security enabled.

Select **Open System** or **Shared Key** for the authentication and click **Next**.

- WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) is a security protocol preventing unauthorized access to your wireless network. WEP encrypts the data portion of each packet exchanged on a wireless network using a 64-bit or 128-bit WEP encryption key.



The window showing the wireless network setting appears. Check the settings and click **Next**.

Wireless network setup



Before entering the IP address for the machine, you must know the computer's network configuration information. If the computer's network configuration is set to DHCP, the wireless network setting should also be DHCP. Likewise, if the computer's network configuration is set to Static, the wireless network setting should also be Static.

If your computer is set to DHCP and you want to use the Static wireless network setting, you must contact the network administrator to get the static IP address.

- **For the DHCP method**

If the IP address assignment method is DHCP, check if DHCP is shown in the **Wireless Network Setting Confirm** window. If it shows Static, click **Change TCP/IP** to change the assignment method to **Receive IP address automatically (DHCP)**.

- **For the Static method**

If the IP address assignment method is Static, check if Static is shown in the **Wireless Network Setting Confirm** window. If it shows DHCP, click **Change TCP/IP** to enter the IP address and other network configuration values for the machine.

For example,

If the computer's network information is as shown follows:

- IP address: 169.254.133.42
- Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0

Then, the machine's network information should be as below:

- IP address: 169.254.133.**43**
- Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0 (Use the computer's subnet mask.)
- Gateway: 169.254.133.1

9 The **Wireless Network Setting Complete** window appears. Click **Next**.

10 When the wireless network settings are completed, disconnect the USB cable between the computer and machine. Click **Next**.



If the **Change PC Network Setting** window appears, follow the steps in the window.

Click **Next** if you are finished with the computer's wireless network settings.

If you set the computer's wireless network to DHCP, it will take several minutes to receive the IP address.

11 Click **Next** when the **Confirm Printer Connection** window appears.

12 Select the components to be installed. Click **Next**.

13 After selecting the components, you can also change the machine name, set the machine to be shared on the network, set the machine as the default machine, and change the port name of each machine. Click **Next**.

14 After the installation is finished, a window asking you to print a test page appears. If you want to print a test page, click **Print a test page**.

Otherwise, just click **Next** and go to step 16.

15 If the test page prints out correctly, click **Yes**.

If not, click **No** to reprint it.

Wireless network setup

16 If you want to register your machine with the Samsung web site and receive useful information, click **On-line Registration**. If not, click **Finish**.

Setup using Macintosh

Items to prepare

- Access point
- Network-connected computer
- Software CD that was provided with your machine
- A machine installed with a wireless network interface
- USB cable

Access point via USB cable

- 1** Check whether the USB cable is connected to the machine.
- 2** Turn on your computer, access point, and machine.
- 3** Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.
- 4** Double-click the CD-ROM icon that appears on your Macintosh desktop.

- 5** Double-click the **MAC_Installer** folder > **Installer OS X** icon.
- 6** Click **Continue**.
- 7** Read the license agreement and click **Continue**.
- 8** Click **Agree** to agree to the license agreement.
- 9** When the message that warns that all applications will close on your computer appears, click **Continue**.
- 10** Click **Wireless Network Setting** button on the **User Options Pane**.
- 11** The software searches the wireless network.
If the software has failed to search the network, check if the USB cable is connected properly between the computer and machine, and follow the instructions in the window.

Wireless network setup



- If wireless network setting has been set before, **Wireless Network Setting Information** window appears.

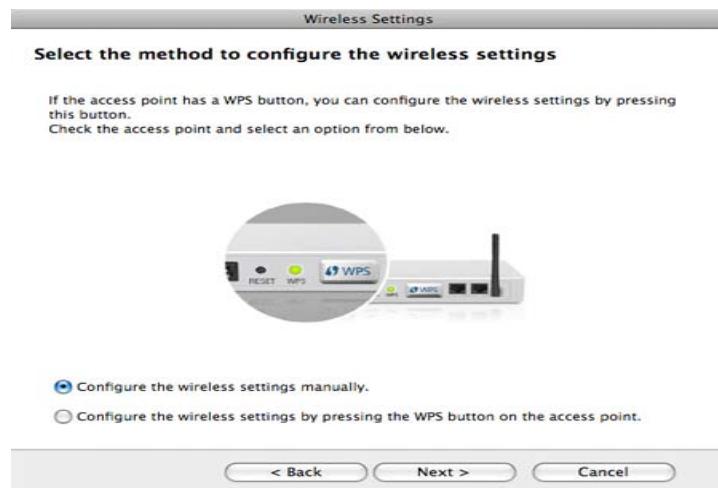
If you want to reset the wireless settings, check the check box and click **Next**.

- For models that support the WPS button (without a USB cable connection), the window shown below will appear.



- With a USB Cable:** Connect the USB cable and click Next, then go to step 7.
- Using the WPS Button:** See "Access point via WPS button (without a USB cable connection)" on page 167.

- 12** Select the method to use from the wireless set up method window.



- Configure the wireless settings manually.:** Go to step 13.
- Configure the wireless settings by pressing the WPS button on the access point.:** Connect to the wireless network by press the WPS button on the access point (or a wireless router).
 - Follow the instructions in the window. When you are done setting the wireless network settings, go to step 16.

- 13** After searching, the window shows the wireless network devices. Select the name (SSID) of the access point you are using and click **Next**.



When you set the wireless configuration manually, click **Advanced Setting**.

- Enter the wireless Network Name:** Enter the SSID of the access point (SSID is case-sensitive).
- Operation Mode:** Select **Infrastructure**.

Wireless network setup

- **Authentication:** Select an authentication type.

Open System: Authentication is not used, and encryption may or may not be used, depending on the need for data security.

Shared Key: Authentication is used. A device that has a proper WEP key can access the network.

WPA Personal or WPA2 Personal: Select this option to authenticate the print server based on the WPA Pre-Shared Key. This uses a shared secret key (generally called Pre Shared Key pass phrase) that is manually configured on the access point and each of its clients.

- **Encryption:** Select the encryption. (None, WEP64, WEP128, TKIP, AES, TKIP, AES)
- **Network Key:** Enter the encryption network key value.
- **Confirm Network Key:** Confirm the encryption network key value.
- **WEP Key Index:** If you are using WEP Encryption, select the appropriate **WEP Key Index**.

The wireless network security window appears when the access point has security enabled.

The wireless network security window appears. The window may differ according to its security mode: WEP or WPA.

- **WEP**

Select **Open System** or **Shared Key** for the authentication and enter the WEP security key. Click **Next**.

WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) is a security protocol preventing unauthorized access to your wireless network. WEP encrypts the data portion of each packet exchanged on a wireless network using a 64-bit or 128-bit WEP encryption key.

- **WPA**

Enter the WPA shared key and click **Next**.

WPA authorizes and identifies users based on a secret key that changes automatically at regular intervals. WPA also uses TKIP (Temporal Key Integrity Protocol) and AES (Advanced Encryption Standard) for data encryption.

Wireless network setup

14 The window shows the wireless network settings and check if settings are right. Click **Next**.

- **For the DHCP method**

If the IP address assignment method is DHCP, check if DHCP is shown in the window. If it shows Static, click **Change TCP/IP** to change the assignment method to DHCP.

- **For the Static method**

If the IP address assignment method is Static, check if Static is shown in the window. If it shows DHCP, click **Change TCP/IP** to enter the IP address and other network configuration values for the machine.

Before entering the IP address for the machine, you must know the computer's network configuration information. If the computer is set to DHCP, you must contact the network administrator to get the static IP address.

For example:

If the computer's network information is shown as follows:

- IP address: 169.254.133.42
- Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0

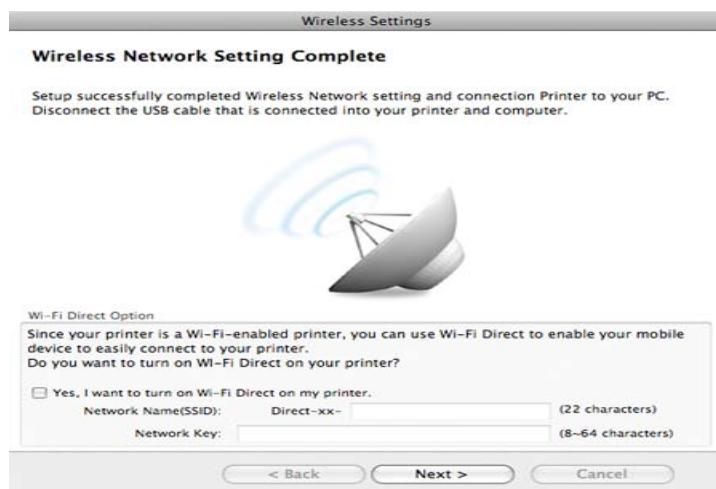
Then, the machine's network information should be as shown below:

- IP address: 169.254.133.43
- Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0 (Use the computer's subnet mask.)
- Gateway: 169.254.133.1

15 When the window that tells you that the network cable connection is confirmed appears, disconnect the network cable and click **Next**.

If the network cable is connected, it may have trouble finding the machine when configuring the wireless network.

16 Wireless network setting is completed. To print from a Wi-Fi Direct supported mobile device, set the Wi-Fi Direct Option (see "Setting up Wi-Fi Direct" on page 183).



Wi-Fi Direct Option:

- Wi-Fi Direct Option appears on the screen only if your printer supports this feature.
- Can start to build Wi-Fi Direct by using Samsung Easy Printer Manager (see "Setting up Wi-Fi Direct" on page 183).

Wireless network setup

- **Network Name(SSID):** The default Network Name is the model name and the maximum length is 22 characters (not including "Direct-xx-").
- **Network Key** is the numeric string, and the size is 8 ~ 64 characters.

- 17** When the wireless network settings are completed, disconnect the USB cable between the computer and machine.
- 18** Wireless network set up is completed. After the installation is finished, click **Quit**.



After completing the wireless network connection, you need to install a machine driver to print from an application (see "Installation for Macintosh" on page 134).

Setting the access point using the WPS button

For models that have a WPS button, you can set the wireless network using the WPS button (without a USB connection) and access point (or a router) WPS button.

Items to prepare

- Access point (or wireless router)
- Network-connected computer

- Software CD that was provided with your machine
- A machine installed with a wireless network interface

Creating the infrastructure network

- 1 Turn on your computer, access point, and machine.
- 2 Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.
- 3 Double-click the CD-ROM icon that appears on your Macintosh desktop.
- 4 Double-click the **MAC_Installer** folder > **Installer OS X** icon.
- 5 Click **Continue**.
- 6 Read the license agreement and click **Continue**.
- 7 Click **Agree** to agree to the license agreement.
- 8 When the message that warns that all applications will close on your computer appears, click **Continue**.
- 9 Click the **Wireless Network Setting** button on the **User Options Pane**.

Wireless network setup

10 Select **Using the WPS button** and click **Next**.



- For models that support the WPS button, the above window appears.
- If your machine is connected with a USB cable, the above window does not appear. Disconnect the USB cable if you want to set up the wireless network using the WPS button.
- If you want to set up the wireless network using the USB cable, refer to "Access point via USB cable" on page 172.

11 The next window asks you to check if your access point (or wireless router) supports WPS or not.

If the access point (or wireless router) has a WPS button, select **Yes** and click **Next**.

12 Follow the instructions in the window to set up the wireless network.

- For models with a display screen, follow the steps below:
 - Press and hold the  (WPS) button on the control panel for about 2-4 seconds. The machine waits up to 2 minutes for the WPS button on the access point (or a router) to be pressed.
 - Press the **WPS (PBC)** button on the access point (or wireless router).

The messages are displayed on the display screen in the order below:

-  **Connecting:** The machine is connecting to the access point (or wireless router).
- Connected:** When the machine is successfully connected to the wireless network, the WPS LED light stays on.

Wireless network setup

- **SSID Type:** After completing the wireless network connection process, the AP's SSID information appears on the display.
- For models without a display screen, follow the steps below:
 - a Press and hold the  (WPS) button on the control panel for about 2 - 4 seconds until the status LED blinks quickly.
The machine starts connecting to the wireless network. The LED blinks slowly for up to two minutes until you press the PBC button on the access point (or wireless router).
 - b Press the **WPS (PBC)** button on the access point (or wireless router).
 - The light blinks fast on the WPS LED. The machine is connecting to the access point (or wireless router).
 - When the machine is successfully connected to the wireless network, the WPS LED light stays on.

13 Wireless network set up is completed. After installation is finished, click **Quit**.



After completing the wireless network connection, you need to install a machine driver to print from an application (see "Installation for Macintosh" on page 134).

Ad hoc via USB cable

If you do not have an access point (AP), you may still connect the machine wirelessly to your computer by setting up an ad hoc wireless network by following these simple directions.

Items to prepare

- Network-connected computer
- Software CD that was provided with your machine
- A machine installed with a wireless network interface
- USB cable

Creating the ad hoc network in Macintosh

- 1 Check whether the USB cable is connected to the machine.
- 2 Turn on your computer and the wireless network machine.
- 3 Insert the supplied software CD into your CD-ROM drive.
- 4 Double-click the CD-ROM icon that appears on your Macintosh desktop.
- 5 Double-click the **MAC_Installer** folder > **Installer OS X** icon.
- 6 Click **Continue**.
- 7 Read the license agreement and click **Continue**.

Wireless network setup

8 Click **Agree** to agree to the license agreement.

9 When the message that warns that all applications will close on your computer appears, click **Continue**.

10 Click **Wireless Network Setting** button on the **User Options Pane**.

11 The software searches for wireless network devices.

 If the search has failed, check if the USB cable is connected between the computer and machine properly, and follow the instructions in the window.

12 After searching the wireless networks, a list of wireless networks your machine has searched appears.

If you want to use the Samsung default ad hoc setting, select the last wireless network on the list, which **Network Name(SSID)** is **Portthru** and **Signal** is **Printer Self Network**.

Then, click **Next**.

If you want to use other ad hoc settings, select another wireless network from the list.

 If you want to change ad hoc settings, click the **Advanced Setting** button.

- **Enter the wireless Network Name:** Enter the SSID name (SSID is case-sensitive).
- **Operation Mode:** Select ad hoc.
- **Channel:** Select the channel (**Auto Setting** or 2412 MHz to 2467 MHz).

• **Authentication:** Select an authentication type.

Open System: Authentication is not used, and encryption may or may not be used, depending on the need for data security.

Shared Key: Authentication is used. A device that has a proper WEP key can access the network.

• **Encryption:** Select the encryption (None, WEP64, WEP128).

• **Network Key:** Enter the encryption network key value.

• **Confirm Network Key:** Confirm the encryption network key value.

• **WEP Key Index:** If you are using WEP Encryption, select the appropriate **WEP Key Index**.

The wireless network security window appears when the ad hoc network has security setting.

Select **Open System** or **Shared Key** for the authentication and click **Next**.

- WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) is a security protocol preventing unauthorized access to your wireless network. WEP encrypts the data portion of each packet exchanged on a wireless network using a 64-bit or 128-bit WEP encryption key.

13 The window showing the wireless network settings appears. Check the settings and click **Next**.

Wireless network setup



Before entering the IP address for the machine, you must know the computer's network configuration information. If the computer's network configuration is set to DHCP, the wireless network setting should also be DHCP. Likewise, if the computer's network configuration is set to Static, the wireless network setting should also be Static.

If your computer is set to DHCP and you want to use Static wireless network setting, you must contact the network administrator to get the static IP address.

- **For the DHCP method**

If the IP address assignment method is DHCP, check if DHCP is shown in the **Wireless Network Setting Confirm** window. If it shows Static, click **Change TCP/IP** to change the assignment method to **Receive IP address automatically (DHCP)**.

- **For the Static method**

If the IP address assignment method is Static, check if Static is shown in the **Wireless Network Setting Confirm** window. If it shows DHCP, click **Change TCP/IP** to enter the IP address and other network configuration values for the machine.

For example,

If the computer's network information is shown as follows:

- IP address: 169.254.133.42
- Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0

Then, the machine's network information should be as shown below:

- IP address: 169.254.133.**43**
- Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0 (Use the computer's subnet mask.)
- Gateway: 169.254.133.1

14 When the window that tells you that the network cable connection is confirmed appears, disconnect the network cable and click **Next**.

If the network cable is connected, it may have trouble finding the machine when configuring the wireless network.

15 The wireless network connects according to the network configuration.

16 Wireless network set up is completed. After installation is finished, click **Quit**.



After completing the wireless network connection, you need to install a machine driver to print from an application (see "Installation for Macintosh" on page 134).

Using a network cable



Machines that do not support the network port will not be able to use this feature (see "Rear view" on page 23).

Your machine is a network compatible machine. To enable your machine to work with your network, you will need to perform some configuration procedures.

Wireless network setup



- After completing the wireless network connection, you need to install a machine driver to print from an application (see "Installing driver over the network" on page 144).
- See your network administrator, or the person that set up your wireless network, for information about your network configuration.

Items to prepare

- Access point
- Network-connected computer
- Software CD that was provided with your machine
- A machine installed with a wireless network interface
- Network cable

Printing a network configuration report

You can identify the network settings of your machine by printing a network configuration report.

See "Printing a network configuration report" on page 141.

IP setting using SetIP Program (Windows)

This program is used to manually set the network IP address of your machine using its MAC address to communicate with the machine. The MAC address is the hardware serial number of the network interface and can be found in the **Network Configuration Report**.

See "Setting IP address" on page 141.

Configuring the machine's wireless network

Before starting you will need to know the network name (SSID) of your wireless network and the network key if it is encrypted. This information was set when the access point (or wireless router) was installed. If you do not know about your wireless environment, please ask the person who set up your network.

To configure wireless parameters, you can use **SyncThru™ Web Service**.

Using SyncThru™ Web Service

Before starting wireless parameter configuration, check the cable connection status.

Wireless network setup

1 Check whether or not the network cable is connected to the machine. If not, connect the machine with a standard network cable.

2 Start a web browser such as Internet Explorer, Safari, or Firefox and enter your machine's new IP address in the browser window.

For example,



3 Click **Login** on the upper right of the SyncThru™ Web Service website.

4 Type in the **ID** and **Password** then click **Login**.

- **ID:** admin
- **Password:** sec00000

5 When the **SyncThru™ Web Service** window opens, click **Network Settings**.

6 Click **Wireless > Wizard**.

 **Wizard** will help you setup the wireless network configuration. However, if you want to set the wireless network directly, select **Custom**.

7 Select the one **Network Name(SSID)** in the list.

- **SSID:** SSID (Service Set Identifier) is a name that identifies a wireless network, access points, and wireless devices attempting to connect to a specific wireless network must use the same SSID. The SSID is case sensitive.
- **Operation Mode:** **Operation Mode** refers to the type of wireless connections (see "Wireless network name and network key" on page 156).
 - **Ad-hoc:** Allows wireless devices to communicate directly with each other in a peer-to-peer environment.
 - **Infrastructure:** Allows wireless devices to communicate with each other through an access point.



If your network's **Operation Mode** is **Infrastructure**, select the SSID of the access point. If the **Operation Mode** is **Ad-hoc**, select the machine's SSID. Note that "portthru" is the default SSID of your machine.

8 Click **Next**.

If the wireless security setting window appears, enter the registered password (network key) and click **Next**.

9 The confirmation window appears, please check your wireless setup. If the setup is right, click **Apply**.

Wireless network setup



Disconnect the network cable (standard or network). Your machine should then start communicating wirelessly with the network. In case of Ad-hoc mode, you can use a wireless LAN and wired LAN simultaneously.

5 When the **SyncThru™ Web Service** window opens, click **Network Settings**.

6 Click **Wireless > Custom**.

You can also turn the Wi-Fi network on/off.

Turning the Wi-Fi network on/off



If your machine has a display, you can also turn on/off the Wi-Fi from the machine's control panel using the **Network** menu.

1 Check whether the network cable is connected to the machine. If not, connect the machine with a standard network cable.

2 Start a web browser such as Internet Explorer, Safari, or Firefox and enter your machine's new IP address in the browser window.

For example,

http://192.168.1.133/

3 Click **Login** on the upper right of the SyncThru™ Web Service website.

4 Type in the **ID** and **Password**, then click **Login**.

- **ID:** admin
- **Password:** sec00000

Setting the Wi-Fi Direct for mobile printing

Wi-Fi Direct is an easy-to-setup peer-to-peer connecting between method for your printer and a mobile device that provides a secure connection and better throughput than ad hoc mode.

With Wi-Fi Direct, you can connect your printer to a Wi-Fi Direct network while concurrently connecting to an access point. You can also use a wired network and a Wi-Fi Direct network simultaneously so multiple users can access and print documents both from Wi-Fi Direct and from a wired network.



- You cannot connect to the internet through the printer's Wi-Fi Direct.
- The supported protocol list may differ from your model, Wi-Fi Direct networks do NOT support IPv6, network filtering, IPSec, WINS, and SLP services.

Setting up Wi-Fi Direct

You can enable Wi-Fi Direct feature by one of the following methods.

Wireless network setup

From the USB cable-connected computer(recommended)

- When setting from the supplied software CD, see the access point via USB cable.
 - Windows user, see "Access point via USB cable" on page 163.
 - Macintosh user, see "Access point via USB cable" on page 172.
- After the driver installation is complete, Samsung Easy Printer Manager can be set and changes in the Wi-Fi Direct can be made.



Samsung Easy Printer Manager is Available for Windows and Macintosh OS users only.

- From the **Start** menu, select **Programs** or **All Programs** > **Samsung Printers** > Samsung Easy Printer Manager > **Device Settings** > **Network**.
 - Wi-Fi Direct On/Off:** Select **On** to enable.
 - Device Name:** Enter the printer's name for searching for your printer on a wireless network. By default, the device name is the model name.
 - IP Address:** Enter the IP address of the printer. This IP address is used only for the local network and not for the infrastructure wired or wireless network. We recommend using the default local IP address (the default local IP address of the printer for Wi-Fi Direct is 192.168.3.1)

- Group Owner:** Activate this option to assign the printer the Wi-Fi Direct group's owner. The **Group Owner** acts similar to a wireless access point. We recommend activating this option.
- Network Key:** If your printer is a **Group Owner**, a **Network Key** is required for other mobile devices to connect to your printer. You can configure a network key yourself, or can remember the given Network Key that is randomly generated by default.

From the machine (Machines with a display screen)

- Select **Network** > **Wireless** > **Wi-Fi Direct** from the control panel.
- Enable **Wi-Fi Direct**.

From the network-connected computer

If your printer is using a network cable or a wireless access point, you can enable and configure Wi-Fi Direct from SyncThru™ Web Service.

- Access **SyncThru™ Web Service**, select **Settings** > **Network Settings** > **Wireless** > **Wi-Fi Direct**.
- Enable or disable **Wi-Fi Direct** and set other options.



- For Linux OS users,
 - Print an IP network configuration report to check the output (see "Printing a network configuration report" on page 141).

Wireless network setup

- Access **SyncThru Web Service**, select **Settings > Network Settings > Wireless > Wi-Fi Direct**.
- Enable or disable **Wi-Fi Direct**.

Setting up the mobile device

- After setting up Wi-Fi Direct from the printer, refer to the user manual of the mobile device you are using to set its Wi-Fi Direct.
- After setting up Wi-Fi Direct, you need to download the mobile printing application (For example: Samsung Mobile printer) to print from your smartphone.



- When you have found the printer you want to connect to from your mobile device, select the printer and the printer's LED will blink. Press the WPS button on the printer and it will be connected to your mobile device.
- If your mobile device does not support WPS, you need to enter the "Network Key" of a printer instead of pushing the WPS button.

Troubleshooting

Problems during setup or driver installation

Printers Not Found

- Your machine may not be turned on. Turn on your computer and the machine.
- USB cable is not connected between your computer and machine. Connect the machine to your computer using the USB cable.
- The machine does not support wireless networking. Check the machine's user's guide included on the software CD supplied with your machine and prepare a wireless network machine.

Connecting Failure - SSID Not Found

- The machine is unable to find the network name (SSID) you have selected or entered. Check the network name (SSID) on your access point and try connecting again.
- Your access point is not turned on. Turn on your access point.

Wireless network setup

Connecting Failure - Invalid Security

- Security is not configured correctly. Check the configured security on your access point and machine.

Connecting Failure - General Connection Error

- Your computer is not receiving a signal from your machine. Check the USB cable and your machine's power.

Connecting Failure - Connected Wired Network

- Your machine is connected with a wired network cable. Remove the wired network cable from your machine.

PC Connection Error

- The configured network address is unable to connect between your computer and machine.
 - For a DHCP network environment
The receives the IP address automatically (DHCP) when computer is configured to DHCP.
 - For a Static network environment
The machine uses the static address when the computer is configured to static address.

For example,

If the computer's network information is as shown below:

- IP address: 169.254.133.42

- Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0

Then the machine's network information should be as below:

- IP address: 169.254.133.43
- Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0 (Use the computer's subnet mask.)
- Gateway: 169.254.133.1

Other problems

If problems occur while using the machine on a network, check the following:



For information on the access point (or wireless router), refer to its own user's guide.

- Your computer, access point (or wireless router), or machine may not be turned on.
- Check the wireless reception around the machine. If the router is far from the machine or there is an obstacle, you might have difficulty receiving the signal.
- Cycle the power for the access point (or wireless router), machine, and computer. Sometimes cycling the power can recover network communication.

Wireless network setup

- Check whether firewall software (V3 or Norton) is blocking the communication.
If the computer and the machine are connected on the same network and it cannot be found when searching, firewall software might be blocking the communication. Refer to the user's guide for the software to turn it off and try searching for the machine again.
- Check whether the machine's IP address is allocated correctly. You can check the IP address by printing the network configuration report.
- Check whether the access point (or wireless router) has a configured security (password). If it has a password, refer to the access point (or wireless router) administrator.
- Check the machine's IP address. Reinstall the machine driver and change the settings to connect to the machine on the network. Due to the characteristics of DHCP, the allocated IP address could change if the machine is not used for a long time or if the access point has been reset.
Register the product's MAC address when you configure the DHCP server on the access point (or wireless router). Then you can always use the IP address that is set with the MAC address. You can identify the Mac address of your machine by printing a network configuration report (see "Printing a network configuration report" on page 141).
- Check the wireless environment. You might not be able to connect to the network in the infrastructure environment where you need to type in a user's information before connecting to the access point (or wireless router).
- This machine only supports IEEE 802.11 b/g/n and Wi-Fi. Other wireless communication types (e.g., Bluetooth) are not supported.

- When using the ad hoc mode, in operating systems such as Windows Vista, you might need to set the wireless connection setting every time you use the wireless machine.
- You cannot use infrastructure mode and ad hoc mode at the same time for Samsung wireless network machines.
- The machine is within the range of the wireless network.
- The machine is located away from obstacles that could block the wireless signal.
Remove any large metal objects between the access point (or wireless router) and the machine.
Make sure the machine and wireless access point (or wireless router) are not separated by poles, walls, or support columns containing metal or concrete.
- The machine is located away from other electronic devices that may interfere with the wireless signal.
Many devices can interfere with the wireless signal, including a microwave oven and some Bluetooth devices.
- Whenever the configuration of your access point (or wireless router) changes, you must do the product's wireless network setup again.

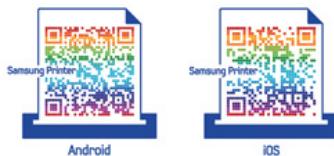
Samsung MobilePrint

What is Samsung MobilePrint?

Samsung MobilePrint is a free application that enables users to print photos, documents, and web pages directly from your smartphone or tablet. **Samsung MobilePrint** is not only compatible with your Android, Windows and iOS smart phones but also with your iPod Touch and tablet PC. It connects your mobile device to a network connected Samsung printer or to a wireless printer through a Wi-Fi access point. Installing a new driver or configuring network settings isn't necessary – just simply install the **Samsung MobilePrint** application, and it will automatically detect compatible Samsung printers. Besides printing photos, web pages, and PDFs, scanning is also supported. If you have Samsung multifunction printer, scan any document into a JPG, PDF, or PNG format for quick and easy viewing on your mobile device.

Downloading Samsung MobilePrint

To download **Samsung MobilePrint**, go to the application store (Samsung Apps, Android Market, App Store, Marketplace) on your mobile device, and just search for "**Samsung MobilePrint**." You can also visit iTunes for Apple devices or Marketplace for Windows devices on your computer.



Supported Mobile OS

- Android OS 2.1 or higher
- iOS 4.0 or higher
- Windows Phone 7 or higher

Supported devices

- **iOS 4.0 or higher:** iPod Touch, iPhone, iPad
- **Android 2.1 or higher:** Galaxy S, Galaxy S2, Galaxy Tab, and Android mobile devices
- **Windows Phone 7 or higher:** Samsung Focus, Omnia7, and OmniaW, and Windows mobile devices



3. Useful Setting Menus

This chapter explains how to browse the current status of your machine, and the method of setting for advanced machine setup.

- **Before you begin reading a chapter**
- **Print menu**
- **Copy menu**
- **Fax menu**
- **Scan menu**
- **System setup**
- **Admin setup**
- **Custom setup**

190

191

192

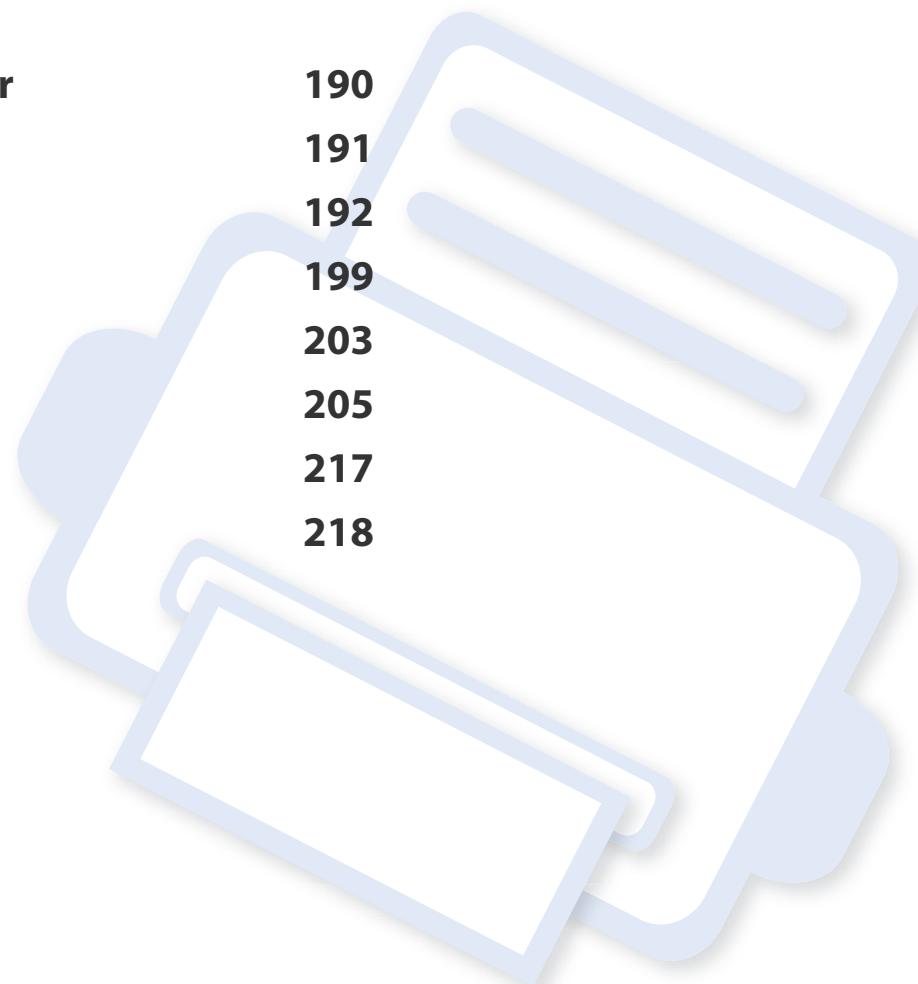
199

203

205

217

218



Before you begin reading a chapter

This chapter explains all the features available for this series' models to help users easily understand the features.

You can check the features available for each model in the Basic Guide (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

The following are tips for using this chapter

- The control panel provides access to various menus to set up the machine or use the machine's functions. These menus can be accessed by pressing  (Menu).
- Some menus may not appear on the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine.
- For models that do not have the  (Menu) on the control panel, this feature is not applicable (see "Control panel overview" on page 24).
- Some menu names may differ from your machine depending on its options or the models.

Print menu



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

To change the menu options:

- Press ***# (Menu) > Print Setup** on the control panel.
- Or press **Setup > Machine Setup > Print Setup** on the touch screen.

| Item | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| Orientation | Selects the direction in which information is printed on a page. |
| Copies | You can enter the number of copies using the number keypad. |
| Resolution | Specifies the number of dots printed per inch (dpi). The higher the setting, the sharper printed characters and graphics. |
| Darkness | Lightens or darkens the print on the page. The Normal setting usually produces the best result. Use the Light toner density setting to save toner. |
| Darken Text | Prints text darker than on a normal document. |
| Emulation | Sets the emulation type and option. |

Copy menu

Copy feature



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

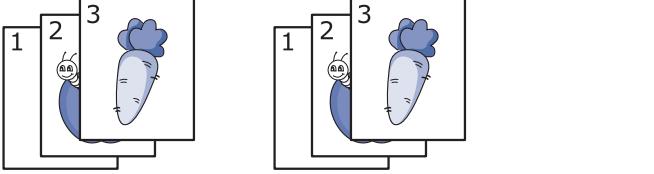
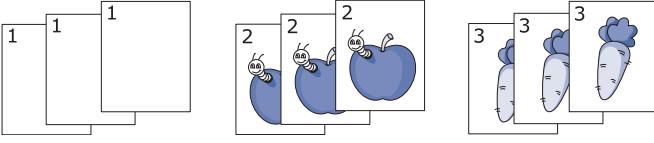
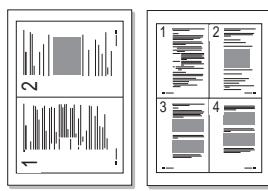
To change the menu options:

- Press (copy) > (Menu) > **Copy Feature** on the control panel.
- Or press **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Default Setting** > **Copy Default** on the touch screen.
- Or press **Copy** > select the menu item you want on the touch screen.

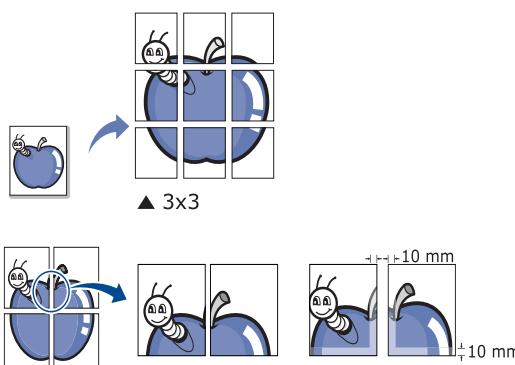
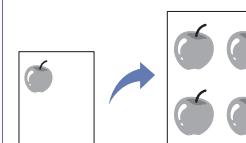
| Item | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| Scan Size | Sets the image size. |
| Original Size | |
| Copies | You can enter the number of copies using the number keypad. |

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Reduce/Enlarge | Reduces or enlarges the size of a copied image (see "Reduced or enlarged copy" on page 61). If the machine is set Eco mode, reduce and enlarge features are not available. |
| Darkness | Adjusts the brightness level to make a copy that is easier to read, when the original contains faint markings and dark images (see "Darkness" on page 60) |
| Contrast | Adjusts the contrast level to scan an original that is easier to read, when the original contains too faint or too dark contents (see "Contrast" on page 60) |
| Original Type | Improves the copy quality by selecting the document type for the current copy job (see "Original" on page 60) |
| Orientation | Sets the original image's orientation. |
| Layout | Adjusts the layout format such as poster, clone, ID copy, 2/4-up, booklet, etc. |

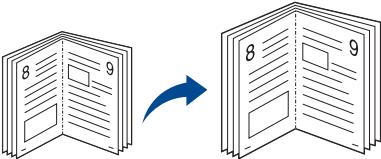
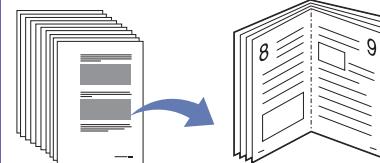
Copy menu

| Item | Description | Item | Description |
|---|--|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">Copy CollationCollate Copy | <p>Set the machine to sort the copy job. For example, if you make 2 copies of a 3 page original, one complete 3 page document will print followed by a second complete document.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">On: Prints output in sets to match the sequence of originals.Off: Prints output sorted into stacks of individual pages.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none">2-up or 4-upN-up Copy | <p>Reduces the size of the original images and prints 2 or 4 pages onto one sheet of paper.</p>  <p> This copy feature is available only when you load originals into the document feeder.</p> |

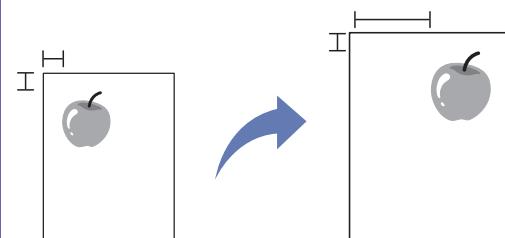
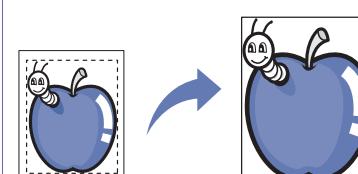
Copy menu

| Item | Description | Item | Description | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|--|------|-------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------------------|--|
| Poster Copy | <p>Prints a single-page document onto 4 (Poster 2x2), 9 (Poster 3x3), or 16 (Poster 4x4) sheets of paper, for the purpose of pasting the sheets together to form one poster-size document.</p>  <p>▲ 3x3 10 mm</p> <p> • This copy feature is available only when you place originals on the scanner glass. • Your original is divided into 9 portions. Each portion is scanned and printed one by one in the following order:</p> <table border="1"><tr><td>1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>5</td><td>6</td></tr><tr><td>7</td><td>8</td><td>9</td></tr></table> | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | Clone Copy | <p>Prints multiple original images on a single page. The number of images is automatically determined by the original image and the paper size.</p>  <p> • This copy feature is available only when you place originals on the scanner glass. • You cannot adjust the copy size using Reduce/Enlarge for the Clone Copy feature.</p> |
| 1 | 2 | 3 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | 5 | 6 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | 8 | 9 | | | | | | | | | | |

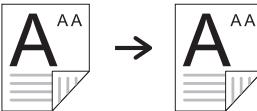
Copy menu

| Item | Description | Item | Description |
|------------------|--|--------------------|---|
| Book Copy | <p>The Book Copy feature allows you to copy an entire book. If the book is too thick, lift the cover until its hinges are caught by the stopper and then close the cover. If the book or magazine is thicker than 30 mm, start copying with the cover open.</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off: Does not use this feature. • Left Page: Use this option to print left page of the book. • Right Page: Use this option to print right page of the book. • Both Page: Use this option to print both pages of the book. <p> This copy feature is available only when you place originals on the scanner glass.</p> | Booklet | <p>The machine automatically prints on one or both sides of the paper, which are then folded to produce a booklet with all of the pages in the correct sequence.</p> <p>The machine will reduce and correctly adjust the position of each image to fit on the selected paper.</p>  |
| | | Adjust Bkgd | <p>Prints an image without its background. This copy feature removes the background color and can be helpful when copying an original containing color in the background, such as a newspaper or a catalog.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off: Does not use this feature. • Auto: Optimizes the background. • Enhance Lev.1~2: The higher the number is, the more vivid the background is. • Erase Lev.1~4: The higher the number is, the lighter the background is. |

Copy menu

| Item | Description | Item | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|-----------------------------|--|
| Margin Shift copying | <p>Allows you to create a binding edge for the document. The image can be adjusted up or down on the page and/or shifted to the right or left.</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off: Does not use this feature. • Auto Center: Automatically copy in the center of the paper. This feature is available only when you place originals on the scanner glass. • Custom Margin: Enter the left, right, top, bottom margin using Number keypad. | Edge Erase copying | <p>Allows you to erase spots, drill holes, fold creases and staple marks along any of the four edges of a document.</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Off: Does not use this feature. • SmallOriginal: rases the edge of the original if it is small. This feature is available only when you place originals on the scanner glass. • Hole Punch: Erases the marks of bookbinding holes. • Book Center: Erases the middle part of the paper which is black and horizontal, when you copy a book. This feature is available only when you place originals on the scanner glass. • Border Erase: Enter the left, right, top, bottom margin using Number keypad. |
| | | Gray Enhance copying | <p>When you make a copy in gray scale, use this feature to get better quality of copy-output.</p> |

Copy menu

| Item | Description | Item | Description |
|--------------------------|---|--------------------------|---|
| Watermark copying | <p>The watermark option allows you to print text over an existing document. For example, you use it when you want to have large gray letters reading "DRAFT" or "CONFIDENTIAL" printed diagonally across the first page or all pages of a document.</p>  | Duplex (continue) | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• 2->1Side • 2->2Side • 2->1Side ROT2  |
| Duplex | <p>You can set the machine to print copies on both sides of paper.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Off: Prints in normal mode.• 1->2Side Short • 1->2Side Long  | | |

Copy menu

Copy Setup



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

To change the menu options:

Press (copy) > (Menu) > **Copy Setup** on the control panel.

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Change Default | Resets the value or setting to the printer's out-of-box state. |

Fax menu

Fax Feature



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

To change the menu options:

- Press (fax) > (Menu) > **Fax Feature** on the control panel.
- Or press **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Default Setting** > **Fax Default** on the touch screen.
- Or press **Fax** > select the menu item you want on the touch screen.

| Item | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| • Scan Size | Sets the image size. |
| • Original Size | |
| Contrast | Adjusts the contrast level to scan an original that is easier to read, when the original contains too faint or too dark contents. |
| Darkness | Adjusts the brightness level to scan an original that is easier to read, when the original contains faint markings and dark images (see "Darkness" on page 68). |

| Item | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| Resolution | The default document settings procedure good results when using typical text-based originals. However, if you send originals that are of poor quality, or contain photographs, you can adjust the resolution to produce a higher quality fax (see "Resolution" on page 68). |
| Duplex | prints the received fax on both sides of paper. |
| Multi Send | Sends a fax to multiple destinations (see "Sending a fax to multiple destinations" on page 66). You cannot send a color fax using this feature. |
| Delay Send | Sets your machine to send a fax at a later time when you will not be present (see "Delaying a fax transmission" on page 256). You cannot send a color fax using this feature. |
| Priority Send | Scans the original into memory and immediately transmits it when the current operation is finished. Priority transmission will interrupt a sending to multiple destinations between stations (example, when the transmission to station A ends, before transmission to station B begins) or between redial attempts (see "Sending a priority fax" on page 257). |

Fax menu

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Forward | Forwards the received or sent fax to other destination by a fax or PC. If you are out of office but have to receive the fax, this feature may be useful. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• See "Forwarding a sent fax to another destination" on page 257.• See "Forwarding a received fax" on page 258. |
| Secure Receive | Stores the received fax in memory without printing out. To print received documents, you need to enter the password. You can prevent your received faxes from being accessed by unauthorized people (see "Receiving in secure receiving mode" on page 262). |
| Add Page | Adds additional documents to a reserved delay fax job (see "Adding documents to a reserved fax" on page 256). |
| Cancel Job | Cancels the delayed fax job which is saved in memory (see "Canceling a reserved fax job" on page 257). |

Sending setup



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

To change the menu options:

- Press (fax) > (Menu) > **Fax Setup** > **Sending** on the control panel.
- Or press **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Default Setting** > **Fax Default** on the touch screen.

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Redial Times | Sets the number of redial attempts. If you enter 0, the machine will not redial. |
| Redial Term | Sets the time interval before automatic redialling. |
| Prefix Dial | Sets a prefix of up to five digits. This number dials before any automatic dial number is started. It is useful for accessing a PABX exchange. |
| ECM Mode | Sends faxes using error correction mode (ECM) to makes sure the faxes are sent smoothly without any error. It may take more time. |
| Send Report | Sets the machine to print a report whether a fax transmission was successfully completed or not. If you select On-Error , the machine prints a report only when a transmission is not successful. |
| Image TCR | Prints a transmission report with a minimized image of the first page of the fax sent. |
| Dial Mode | Sets the dialing mode to either tone or pulse. This setting may not be available depending on your country. |

Fax menu

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Toll Save | Sends faxes at a preset toll-saving time to save on call costs. This setting may not be available depending on your country. |
| Setup Wizard | Makes it easy to configure the necessary fax options such as machine ID, fax number, etc. |

Receiving setup



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

To change the menu options:

- Press (fax) > (Menu) > **Fax Setup** > **Receiving** on the control panel.
- Or press **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Default Setting** > **Fax Default** on the touch screen.

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Receive Mode | Selects the default fax receiving mode. |

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Ring To Answer | Specifies the number of times the machine rings before answering an incoming call. |
| Stamp RCV Name | Automatically prints the page number, and the date and time of reception at the bottom of each page of a received fax. |
| Rcv Start Code | Initiates fax reception from an extension phone plugged into the EXT socket on the back of the machine. If you pick up the extension phone and hear fax tones, enter the code. It is preset to *9* at the factory. |
| Auto Reduction | Automatically reduces an incoming fax page to fit the size of the paper loaded in the machine. |
| Discard Size | Discards a specific length from the end of the received fax. |
| Junk Fax Setup | Blocks any unwanted faxes that you stored in the memory as junk fax numbers. This setting may not be available depending on your country. |
| DRPD Mode | Enables a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. You can set the machine to recognize different ring patterns for each number. This setting may not be available depending on your country (see "Receiving faxes using DRPD mode" on page 261). |

Fax menu

| Item | Description |
|---|---|
| Duplex Print | Prints the received fax data on both sides of the paper. You can save the paper usage. |
| • Doc Box Saving • Document Box Saving | Stores received faxes in the common box. This menu only appears when an optional mass storage device (HDD) drive has been installed (see "Variety feature" on page 10). |

Scan menu

Scan feature



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

To change the menu options:

- Press (scan) > (Menu) > **Scan Feature** on the control panel.
- Or press **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Default Setting** > **Scan Default** on the touch screen.
- Or press **Scan** > select the menu item you want on the touch screen.

| Item | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| • USB Default | Sets scan destination to a USB. You scan the originals and save the scanned image to a USB device. |
| • USB | Sets scan destination to an email. You scan the originals and email the scanned image to destinations (see "Scanning to email" on page 245). |
| • E-mail Default | Sets scan destination to an FTP server. You scan the originals and send the scanned image to an FTP server (see "Scanning to FTP/SMB server" on page 246). |
| • Send Email | |
| • Custom Email | |
| • FTP Default | |
| • FTP | |

| Item | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| • SMB Default | Sets scan destination to an SMB server. You scan the originals and send the scanned image to an SMB server (see "Scanning to FTP/SMB server" on page 246). |
| • SMB | |
| Send Report | Prints a confirmation report showing whether the scanned image sending was successful. |
| Local PC | Sets scan destination to a usb-connected computer. You scan the originals and save the scanned image to a directory such as My Documents (see "Basic Scanning" on page 64). |
| Network PC | Sets scan destination to a network-connected computer. You scan the originals and save the scanned image to a directory such as My Documents (see "Scanning from network connected machine" on page 244). |
| Document Box | Sets scan destination to a Document Box . You scan the originals and send the scanned image to the storage which called Document Box in the machine. |
| Shared Boxes | Sets scan destination to a shared folder. You can create and use the shared folder (see "Using shared folder features" on page 265). |

Scan menu

Scan setup



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

To change the menu options:

- Press > (Menu) > **Scan Setup** on the control panel.
- Or press **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Default Setting** > **Scan Default** on the touch screen.

| Item | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| Contrast | Adjust the contrast level to scan lighter or darker than the original. |

| Item | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| Scan Size | Sets the image size. |
| Original Size | |
| Original Type | Sets the original document's type. |
| Resolution | Sets the image resolution. |
| Color Mode | Sets the color mode. |
| File Format | Sets the file format in which the image is to be saved. If you select BMP, JPEG, TIFF, or PDF, you can select to scan multiple pages. |
| Darkness | Adjusts the brightness level to scan. |

System setup

Machine setup



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

To change the menu options:

- Press **Menu** > **System Setup** > **Machine Setup** on the control panel.
- Or press **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Initial Setup** on the touch screen.

| Item | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Machine ID | Sets the machine ID which will be printed at the top of each fax page that you send. |
| Fax Number | Sets the fax number which will be printed at the top of each fax page that you send. |
| Date & Time | Sets the date and time. |
| Clock Mode | Selects the format for displaying time between 12 hr. and 24 hr. |
| Form Menu | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Off: Prints in normal mode.• Single Form: Prints all page using the first form.• Double Form: Prints the front page using the first form and the back page using the second form. |

| Item | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| Select Form | Form overlay is images stored on the printer's mass storage device (HDD) as a special file format that can be printed in layers on any document. |
| HDD Spooling | When On , stores documents on the mass storage device (HDD) for network printing. |
| Language | Sets the language of the text that appears on the control panel display. |
| Default Mode | Sets the machine's default mode among fax mode, copy mode, or scan mode. |
| Default Paper Size | You can set the default paper size to use. |
| Power Save | Sets how long the machine waits before going to power save mode. When the machine does not receive data for an extended period of time, power consumption is automatically lowered. |
| Scan PWR Save | Sets how long the machine's scanner part waits before going to power save mode. When the scanner does not receive data for an extended period of time, power consumption is automatically lowered. |
| System Timeout | Sets the time that the machine remembers previously used copy settings. After the timeout, the machine restores the default copy settings. |

System setup

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| Job Timeout | Sets the length of time the printer waits before printing the last page of a print job that does not end with a command to print the page. |
| Wakeup Event | You can set the condition to wake up from power-save mode. Set the item on. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Button Press: When you press any button except power button, the machine wake up from the power save mode. Scanner: When you insert paper in the document feeder, the machine wake up from the power save mode. Printer: When you open or close the paper tray, the machine wake up from the power save mode. |
| Auto Continue | Determine whether or not the machine continues printing when it detects the paper does not match the paper settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Off: If a paper mismatch occurs, the machine waits until you insert the correct paper. On: If a paper mismatch occurs, an error message will display. The machine waits for about 30 second, then automatically clear the message and continue printing. |
| Altitude Adj. Altitude Adjustment | Optimize print quality according to the machine's altitude. |

| Item | Description |
|---|--|
| Auto CR | Allows you to append the required carriage return to each line feed, which is useful for Unix or DOS users. |
| Firmware Version | Shows the product's firmware version. |
| AutoComplete | Provides suggestions while you type an email address or fax number. This enables you to find and select the data without typing it in completely. |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tray Chaining Auto Tray Switch | Determine whether or not the machine continues printing when it detects the paper does not match. For example, if both tray 1 and tray 2 are filled with the same size paper, the machine automatically prints from tray 2 after the tray 1 runs out of paper. <div style="background-color: #e0e0e0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;">  This option does not appear if you selected Auto for Paper Source from printer driver. </div> |
| Paper Substit. Paper Substitution | Automatically substitutes the printer driver's paper size to prevent the paper mismatch between Letter and A4. For example, if you have A4 paper in the tray but you set the paper size to Letter in the printer driver, the machine prints on A4 paper and vice versa. |
| Paper Mismatch | Determine whether to disregard the paper mismatch error or not. Select Off , then the machine does not stop printing even if the paper mismatches. |

System setup

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| PrintBlankPage | The printer detects the printing data from computer whether a page is empty or not. You can set to print or skip the blank page. |
| Multi-Bin | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mode: Selects the multi-bin mode you want to use. Default Bin: Selects the bin to use as a default. |
| Default Source | Sets the tray to use as a default. |
| Address Book | Views or prints the phone book or email address list. |
| Maintenance | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clean Drum: Cleans the OPC drum of the cartridge by printing a sheet. Clean Fuser: Cleans the fuser by printing a sheet. CLR Empty Msg.: This option appears only when toner cartridge is empty. Supplies Info.: Allows you to check how many pages are printed and how much toner is left in the cartridge. TonerLow Alert: If toner in the cartridge has run out, a message informing the user to change the toner cartridge appears. You can set the option for this message to appear or not. Paper Stacking: If you use a machine in a humid area, or you are using the damp print media caused by a high humidity, the print-outs on the output tray may be curled and may not be stacked properly. In this case, you can set the machine to use this function to let print-outs stacked firmly. But, using this function will make the print speed slow. |

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Import Setting | Imports data stored on a USB memory stick to the machine. |
| Export Setting | Exports data stored on a USB memory stick to the machine. |
| Toner Save | Activating this mode extends the life of your toner cartridge and reduces your cost per page beyond what one would experience in the normal mode, but it reduces print quality. |
| Quiet Mode | You can reduce the printing noise by turning this menu on. However, the printing speed and quality may be declined. |
| Eco Settings | <p>Allows you to save print resources and enables eco-friendly printing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Default Mode: Select whether to turn the Eco mode on or off. <p> On force (On-Forced): Sets the Eco mode on with password. If a user wants to turn the Eco mode on/off, the user needs to enter the password.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select Template (Select Temp.): Selects the eco template set from the SyncThru™ Web Service. |
| Clear Setting | Restores the machine's factory default settings. |

System setup

Paper setup



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

To change the menu options:

- Press **MENU > System Setup > Paper Setup** on the control panel.
- Or press **Setup > Machine Setup > Paper Setup** on the touch screen.

| Item | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Paper Size | Sets the paper size as A4, Letter, or other paper sizes, according to your requirements. |
| Paper Type | Chooses the type of the paper for each tray. |
| Paper Source | Selects from which tray the paper is used. |
| Margin | Sets the margins for the document. |
| Tray Confirm | Activates the tray confirmation message. If you open and close a tray, a window asking you whether to set the paper size and type for the tray just opened appears. |

Sound / Volume



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

To change the menu options:

- Press **MENU > System Setup > Sound/Volume** on the control panel.
- Or press **Setup > Machine Setup > Initial Setup > Sound/Volume** on the touch screen.

| Item | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Key Sound | Turns the key sound on or off. With this option set to on, a tone sounds each time a key is pressed. |
| Alarm Sound | Turns the alarm sound on or off. With this option set to on, an alarm tone sounds when an error occurs or fax communication ends. |

System setup

| Item | Description |
|---------|---|
| Speaker | <p>Turns on or off the sounds from the telephone line through the speaker, such as a dial tone or a fax tone. With this option set to Comm. which means the speaker is on until the remote machine answers.</p> <p> You can adjust the volume level using On Hook Dial. You can adjust the speaker volume only when the telephone line is connected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a Press  (fax) on the control panel.b Press On Hook Dial. A dial tone sounds from the speaker.c Press the arrows until you hear the volume you want.d Press On Hook Dial to save the change and return to ready mode. |
| Ringer | Adjusts the ringer volume. For the ringer volume, you can select off, low, middle, and high level. |

Report



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

To change the menu options:

- Press  (**Menu**) > **System Setup** > **Report** on the control panel.
- Or press **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Reports** on the touch screen.

| Item | Description |
|---|--|
| Menu Map | Prints the menu map which shows the layout and current settings of this machine. |
| All Reports | Prints all kinds of reports that this machine provides. |
| Configuration | Prints a report on the machine's overall configuration. |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Supplies Info.• Supplies Information | Prints supplies' information page. |
| Address Book | Prints all of the email addresses currently stored in the machine's memory. |

System setup

| Item | Description |
|--|---|
| Demo Page | Prints the demo page to check whether your machine is printing properly or not. |
| Fax Send | Prints a transmission report including the fax number, the number of pages, the elapsed time of the job, the communication mode, and the communication results for fax job. You can set up your machine to automatically print a transmission confirmation report after each fax job. |
| Fax Sent | Prints information on the faxes you have recently sent. |
| Fax Received | Prints information on the faxes you have recently received. |
| Email Sent | Prints information on the emails you have recently sent. |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Schedule Jobs • Fax Scheduled Jobs | Prints the document list currently stored for delayed faxes along with the starting time and type of each operation. |
| JunkFax | Prints the fax numbers specified as junk fax numbers. |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Network Conf. • Network Configuration | Prints information on your machine's network connection and configuration. |

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • User Auth • Local User Authentication | Prints the authorized users who are allowed to use the email function. |
| PCL Font | Prints the PCL font list. |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PS Font • PS3 Font List | Prints the PS/PS3 font list. |
| EPSON Font | Prints the EPSON font list. |
| KSC5843 Font | Prints the KSC5843 font list. |
| KSC5895 Font | Prints the KSC5895 font list. |
| KSSM Font List | Prints the KSSM font list. |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Net User Auth • Network User Authentication | Prints the users and their IDs who logged in the domain. |
| Usage Counter | Prints a usage page. The usage page contains the total number of pages printed. |
| Fax Options | Prints the information of a fax reports. |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stored Job List • Stored Jobs | Prints jobs currently stored in the optional memory or on a mass storage device (HDD). |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Completed Job • Completed Jobs | Prints list of completed jobs. |

System setup

| Item | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| Accounting Report | This is used only available when Job Accounting is enabled from the SyncThru™ Web Admin Service. You can print a report of printout counts for each user. |

Maintenance



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

To change the menu options:

- Press **Menu** > **System Setup** > **Maintenance** on the control panel.
- Or press **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Initial Setup** on the touch screen.

| Item | Description |
|---|---|
| Supplies Life | Shows the supply life indicators (see "Monitoring the supplies life" on page 79.) |
| TonerLow Alert | Customizes the level to alert toner low or toner empty (see "Setting the toner low alert" on page 80). |
| Serial Number Serial No. | Shows the machine's serial number. When you call for service or register as a user on the Samsung website, you can find this. |
| Paper Stacking | Enables the automatic linking feature for trays. when one tray is not available for paper empty or mismatch, this option allows your printer to feed paper from another available tray. |
| Color | Allows you to adjust the color setting such as contrast level, color registration, color density, etc. |
| Ram Disk | Sets some part of ram disk to the job storage area. Using the storage area activates the job manage menu (see "Job manage" on page 212). This allows the data from your computer to be sent to the print queue of the ram disk. |

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| CLR Empty Msg. | When toner cartridge is empty, this option appears. You can clear the empty message. |
| Ignore Toner | You can set the machine to ignore the toner empty message and continue printing except incoming faxes. |

System setup

Clear setting



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

To change the menu options:

- Press **Menu** > **System Setup** > **Clear Setting** on the control panel.
- Or press **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Restore Options** on the touch screen.

| Item | Description |
|--|---|
| All Settings | Clears all of the data stored in memory and resets all of your settings to the factory default. |
| Printer Setup | Restores all of the printer options to the factory default. |
| Paper Setup | Restores all of the paper options to the factory default. |
| Fax Setup Fax Default | Restores all of the fax options to the factory default. |
| Copy Setup Copy Default | Restores all of the copy options to the factory default. |

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| Scan Setup Scan Default | Restores all of the scan options to the factory default. |
| System Setup | Restores all of the system options to the factory default. |
| Network Setup | Restores all of the network options to the factory default. (Reboot required.) |
| Address Book | Clears all of the email address entries stored in memory. |
| Fax Sent Sent Report | Clears all records of sent faxes. |
| Email Sent | Clears all records of sent emails. |
| Fax Received Fax RCV Report Rcvd Report | Clears all records of received faxes. |

Job manage



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

System setup

To change the menu options:

- Press  (Menu) > **System Setup** > **Job Manage** on the control panel.

| Item | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Active Job | Shows the print job lists that are waiting to be printed. |
| Store Job | Shows the print job lists that are stored on the disk. |
| File Policy | If the memory already has the same name when you entered a new file name, you can rename or overwrite it. |

Image overwrite



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

- Press  (Menu) > **System Setup** > **ImageOverwrite** on the control panel.

| Item | Description |
|---------------|---|
| Manual | You can overwrite the embedded USB memory to clear all of the data stored in. |

USB setup



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

- Press **USB** on the touch screen.

| Option | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Print From | Views the file list from the File Navigation . Select a file to print. |
| Scan to USB | Sets scan destination to a USB. You scan the originals and save the scanned image to a USB device. |
| File Manage | Views the file list from the File Navigation . Select a file to delete. You can format the USB device. |
| Show Space | Shows the remaining space. |

System setup

Emulation setup



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

- Press (Menu) > **Print Setup** > **Emulation** on the control panel.

| Item | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Emulation Type | The machine language defines how the computer communicates with the machine. |
| Setup | Sets the detailed settings for the selected emulation type. |

Email setup



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

- Press **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Email Setup** on the touch screen.

| Option | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| SMTP Server | Sets the SMTP server configuration. |
| Send to Self | Sets to send the mail to yourself so that you can back up the email or use as a reminder. |
| Default To Address | Sets an email destination address as a default one. |
| Default From | Sets a sender's email address as a default one. |
| Default Subject | Sets an email's subject as a default one. |

System setup

Address book setup



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

- Press **Setup > Machine Setup > Address Book** on the touch screen.

| Option | Description |
|------------------|--|
| PhoneBook | Adds, views, prints or deletes the phone book list. You also can create a group. |
| Email | Adds, views, prints or deletes the email list. You also can create a group. |

Document box setup



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

Doc Box Feature

- Press *** (Menu) > Document Box > Doc Box Feature** on the control panel.

| Option | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| Add From Scan | Stores scanned documents in a box. The stored file will be named automatically as "yearmonthdayhourminutesecond". |
| Task From Box | Prints a document from a box. |

Doc Box Setup

- Press *** (Menu) > Document Box > Doc Box Setup** on the control panel.

| Option | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| Add From Scan | Sets the default options for storing the document to a box. |
| Task From Box | Sets the default options for printing the document from a box. |

System setup

Network setup



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

- Press ***# (Menu)**> **Network** on the control panel,
- Or press **Setup > Machine Setup > Network Setup** on the touch screen.

| Option | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| TCP/IP (IPv4) | Selects the appropriate protocol and configure parameters to use the network environment. There are lots of parameters to be set. If you are not sure, leave as is, or consult the network administrator. |
| TCP/IP (IPv6) | Selects this option to use the network environment through IPv6 (see "IPv6 configuration" on page 153). |
| Ethernet Speed | Configure the network transmission speed. |
| 802.1x | You can selects the user authentication for network communication. For detailed information consult the network administrator. |

| Option | Description |
|--|---|
| Wireless | Selects this option to use the wireless network. |
| Clear Setting | Reverts the network settings to the default values. (Reboot required.) |
| • Network Conf. • Network Configuration | This list shows information on your machine's network connection and configuration. |
| Net. Activate | You can sets whether to use Ethernet on or off. |
| Http Activate | You can sets whether to use SyncThru™ Web Service or not. |

Admin setup

| Item | Description |
|------------------|---|
| Password Protect | Sets the password to access the Admin Setup menu. Select On to use this option and enter the password. |
| Change Password | Changes the machine's password for accessing the Admin Setup . |
| Maintenance | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Clean Fuser: Cleans the fuser by printing a sheet. The printed sheet has toner debris on it.• CLR Empty Msg.: Prevents the Toner Low Alert message from appearing on the display.• Supplies Info.: Allows you to check how many pages are printed and how much toner is left in the cartridge.• Toner Low Alert: If toner in the cartridge has run out, a message informing the user to change the toner cartridge appears. You can set the option for this message to appear or not.• Ram Disk: Enables/disables RAM disk to manage jobs. Depending on the installed optional memory size, you can set the RAM disk size to between 32 and 64 MB. This option does not appear if you have installed mass storage device (HDD). |

Custom setup

This menu appears only when the **XOA** (eXtensible Open Architecture) web application is installed. Contact the administrator to use this menu.



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine (see "Menu overview" on page 33).

- Press (**Menu**) > **Custom** on the control panel.



4. Special Features

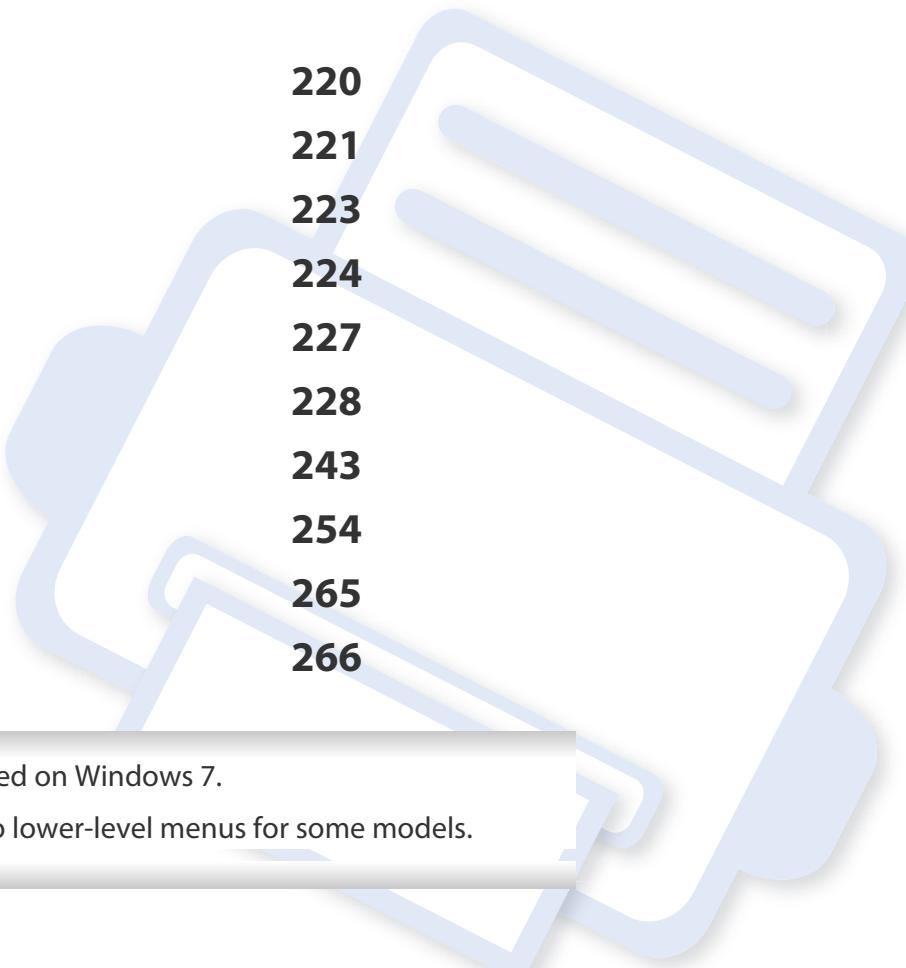
This chapter explains special copying, scanning, faxing, and printing features.

- **Altitude adjustment**
- **Storing email address**
- **Entering various characters**
- **Setting up the fax address book**
- **Registering authorized users**
- **Printing features**
- **Scan features**
- **Fax features**
- **Using shared folder features**
- **Using memory/hard drive features**



- The procedures in this chapter are mainly based on Windows 7.
- It may be necessary to press **OK** to navigate to lower-level menus for some models.

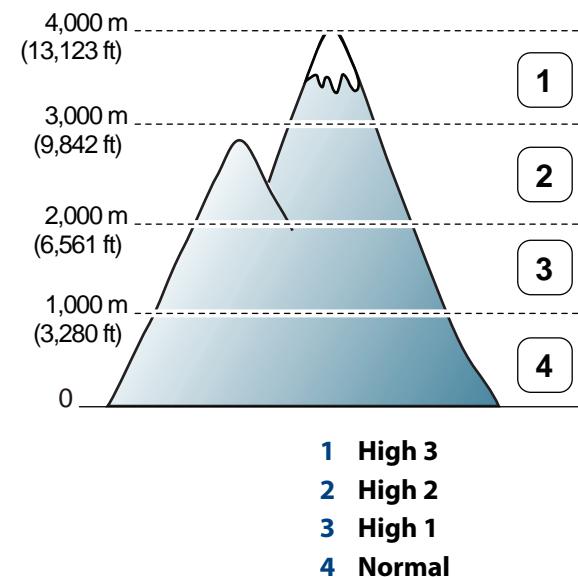
220
221
223
224
227
228
243
254
265
266



Altitude adjustment

Print quality is affected by atmospheric pressure, which is determined by the height of the machine above sea level. The following information will guide you on how to set your machine for the best print quality.

Before you set the altitude value, determine the altitude where you are.



You can set the altitude value from **Device Settings** in Samsung Easy Printer Manager program or **Machine** section in Printer Settings Utility program.

- For Windows and Macintosh users, see "Device Settings" on page 276.
- For Linux users, see "Using Smart Panel" on page 279.



- If your machine is connected to the network, you can set the altitude via SyncThru™ Web Service (see "Using SyncThru™ Web Service" on page 271).
- You can also set the altitude in **System Setup** option on the machine's display (see "Machine's basic settings" on page 39).

Storing email address



This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Features by models" on page 7).

You can set up address book with the email addresses you use frequently via SyncThru™ Web Service and then easily and quickly enter email addresses by entering the location numbers assigned to them in address book.

Storing on your machine

To scan and send an image as an email attachment, you need to set up email address using SyncThru™ Web Service.

- 1 Access the SyncThru™ Web Service (see "Using SyncThru™ Web Service" on page 271).
- 2 Click **Login** on the upper right of the SyncThru™ Web Service website.
- 3 Type in the **ID** and **Password** then click **Login**.
 - **ID: admin**
 - **Password: sec00000**
- 4 Click **Address Book > Individual > Add**.
- 5 Select the **Speed No.** and enter e-mail address and fax number.



If you need to set SMB or FTP sever information, check SMB or FTP and set the information.

- 6 Click **Apply**.

- 7 If you make a group, click **Address Book > E-mail Group > Add Group**.

- 8 Select the **Speed No.** and enter **Group Name**.



You can easily add individual address if you check **Yes** for **Add individual(s) after this group is created**.

- 9 Click **Apply**.

Storing email address

Searching for an email address

Searching sequentially through memory

- 1 Select  (scan) >  (Address Book) > **Search&Send** > Select an address group > **All** on the control panel.
Or select **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Next** > **Address Book** > **Email** > **View List** > **Individual** or **Group** on the touch screen.
- 2 Search through the entire memory in index (numerical) order, and select the name and address you want.

Searching with a particular first letter

- 1 Select  (scan) on the control panel.
- 2 Press  (Address Book) > **Search&Send** > Select an address group > **ID** on the control panel.
- 3 Enter the first few letters of the name you want.
- 4 Press the arrows until the name and number you want appears.

Entering various characters

As you perform various tasks, you may need to enter names and numbers. For example, when you set up your machine, you enter your name or your company's name, and the fax number. When you store fax numbers or email addresses in memory, you may also enter the corresponding names.

Entering alphanumeric characters

Press the button until the correct letter appears on the display. For example, to enter the letter O, press 6, labeled with MNO. Each time you press 6, the display shows a different letter, M, N, O, m, n, o and finally 6. To find the letter that you want to enter, see "Keypad letters and numbers" on page 223.



- You can enter a space by pressing 1 twice.
- To delete the last digit or character, press the left/right or up/down arrow button.

Keypad letters and numbers



- Special character sets may differ from your machine depending on its options or the models.
- Some of the follow key values may not appear depending on the job you are doing.

| Key | Assigned numbers, letters, or characters |
|-----|---|
| 1 | @ / . ' 1 |
| 2 | A B C a b c 2 |
| 3 | D E F d e f 3 |
| 4 | G H I g h i 4 |
| 5 | J K L j k l 5 |
| 6 | M N O m n o 6 |
| 7 | P Q R S p q r s 7 |
| 8 | T U V t u v 8 |
| 9 | W X Y Z w x y z 9 |
| 0 | & + - , 0 |
| * | * % ^ _ ~ ! # \$ () [] (These symbols are available when you type for network authentication.) |
| # | # = ? " : { } < > ; (These symbols are available when you type for network authentication.) |

Setting up the fax address book

You can set up speed number with the fax numbers you use frequently via SyncThru™ Web Service and then easily and quickly enter fax numbers by entering the location numbers assigned to them in address book.

Registering a speed dial number

- 1 Select  (fax) >  (Address Book) > **New&Edit** > **Speed Dial** on the control panel.

Or select **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Next** > **Address Book** > **Phone Book** > **View List** > **Individual** >  (options) > **Add** on the touch screen.

- 2 Enter a speed dial number and press **OK**.

 If an entry is already stored in the number you choose, the display shows the message to allow you to change it. To start over with another speed dial number, press  (Back).

- 3 Enter the name you want and press **OK**.

- 4 Enter the fax number you want and press **OK**.

- 5 Press the  (Cancel or Stop/Clear) button to return to ready mode.

Using speed dial numbers

When you are prompted to enter a destination number while sending a fax, enter the speed dial number at which you stored the number you want.

- For a one-digit (0-9) speed dial number, press and hold the corresponding digit button on the number keypad for more than 2 seconds.
- For a two- or three-digit speed dial number, press the first digit button(s) and then hold down the last digit button for more than 2 seconds.
- You can print the address book list by selecting  (fax) >  (Address Book) > **Print**.

Editing speed dial numbers

- 1 Select  (fax) >  (Address Book) > **New&Edit** > **Speed Dial** on the control panel.

Or select **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Next** > **Address Book** > **Phone Book** > **View List** > **Individual** on the touch screen.

- 2 Enter the speed dial number you want to edit and press **OK**.

- 3 Change the name and press **OK**.

Setting up the fax address book

- 4 Change the fax number and press **OK**.
- 5 Press  (**Cancel** or **Stop/Clear**) to return to ready mode.
- 7 When you have finished, select **No** when **Another No.?** appears and press **OK**.
- 8 Press  (**Cancel** or **Stop/Clear**) to return to ready mode.

Registering a group dial number

- 1 Select  (fax) >  (**Address Book**) > **New&Edit** > **Group Dial** on the control panel.

Or select **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Next** > **Address Book** > **Phone Book** > **View List** > **Group** >  (options) > **Add** on the touch screen.

- 2 Enter a group dial number and press **OK**.

 If an entry is already stored in the number you choose, the display shows the message to allow you to change it. To start over with another speed dial number, press  (**Back**).

- 3 Search by entering the first few letters of the speed dial's name to put in the group.

- 4 Select the name and number you want and press **OK**.

- 5 Select **Yes** when **Add?** appears.

- 6 Repeat step 3 to include other speed dial numbers into the group.

Editing group dial numbers

- 1 Select  (fax) >  (**Address Book**) > **New&Edit** > **Group Dial** on the control panel.

Or select **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Next** > **Address Book** > **Phone Book** > **View List** > **Group** on the touch screen.

- 2 Enter the group dial number you want to edit and press **OK**.

 Enter a new speed dial number to add and press **OK**, then **Add?** appears. Enter a speed dial number stored in the group and press **OK**, **Delete?** appears.

- 3 Press **OK** to add or delete the number.

- 4 Repeat step 3 to add or delete more numbers.

- 5 Select **No** at the **Another No.?** and press **OK**.

- 6 Press  (**Cancel** or **Stop/Clear**) to return to ready mode.

Setting up the fax address book

Searching address book for an entry

There are two ways to search for a number in memory. You can either scan from A to Z sequentially, or you can search by entering the first letters of the name associated with the number.

- 1 Select ct  (fax) >  (Address Book) > **Search&Dial** > **Speed Dial** or **Group Dial** on the control panel.
- 2 Enter **All** or **ID** and press **OK**.
- 3 Press the name and number or the keypad button labeled with the letter you want to search.
For example, if you want to find the name "MOBILE," press the **6** button, which is labeled with "MNO."
- 4 Press  (Cancel or Stop/Clear) to return to ready mode.

Printing address book

You can check your  (Address Book) settings by printing a list.

- 1 Select ct  (fax) >  (Address Book) > **Print** on the control panel.
- 2 Press **OK**.
The machine begins printing.

Registering authorized users



This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Features by models" on page 7).

If you have connected your machine to a network and set up the network parameters correctly, you can scan and send images over the network. To send a scanned image through email or via network server safely, you must register account information of authorized users to your local machine using SyncThru™ Web Service.

- 1** Access the SyncThru™ Web Service (see "Using SyncThru™ Web Service" on page 271).
- 2** Click **Login** on the upper right of the SyncThru™ Web Service website.
- 3** Type in the **ID** and **Password** then click **Login**.
 - **ID: admin**
 - **Password: sec00000**
- 4** Click **Security > User Access Control > Authentication**.
- 5** Select **Local Authentication** in the **Authentication Method**, and click **Apply**.
- 6** Click **OK** in the confirmation pop-up window.
- 7** Click **User Profile > Add**.

8

Enter **User Name**, **Login ID**, **Password**, **Confirm Password**, **E-mail Address**, and **Fax Number**.



You can easily add individual address if you check **Yes** for **Add individual(s) after this group is created**.

9

Click **Apply**.

Printing features



- For basic printing features, refer to the Basic Guide (see "Basic printing" on page 53).
- This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Features by models" on page 7).

Changing the default print settings

- 1 Click the Windows **Start** menu.
- 2 Select **Control Panel > Devices and Printers**.
- 3 Right-click on your machine.
- 4 Select **Printing preferences**.



If **Printing preferences** has a ▶, you can select other printer drivers connected to the selected printer.

- 5 Change the settings on each tab.
- 6 Click **OK**.



If you want to change the settings for each print job, change it in **Printing Preferences**.

Setting your machine as a default machine

- 1 Click the Windows **Start** menu.
- 2 Select **Control Panel > Devices and Printers**.
- 3 Select your machine.
- 4 Right-click your machine and select **Set as Default Printer**.



If **Printing preferences** has a ▶, you can select other printer drivers connected to the selected printer.

Printing features

Using advanced print features



XPS printer driver: used to print XPS file format.

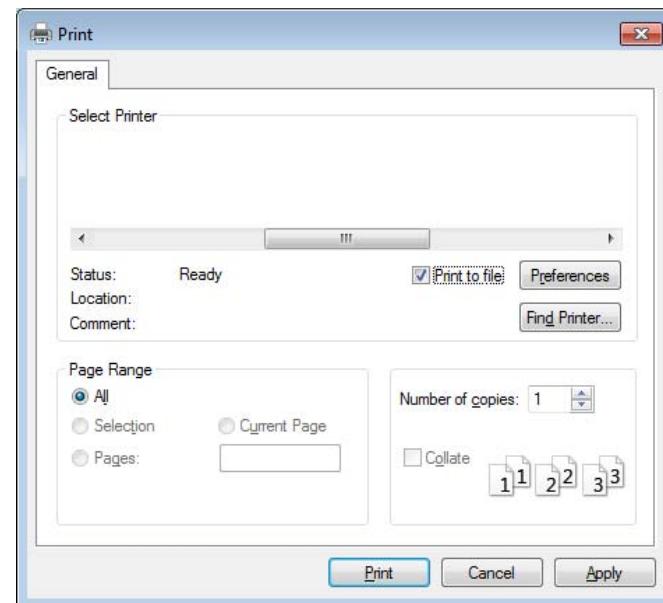
- See "Features by models" on page 7.
- The XPS printer driver can be installed only on Windows Vista OS or higher.
- Install optional memory when an XPS job does not print because the printer is out of memory.
- For models that provide XPS driver on the software CD:
 - You can install the XPS printer driver when you insert the software CD into your CD-ROM drive. When the installation window appears, select **Advanced Installation > Custom Installation**. You can select the XPS printer driver in the **Select Software and Utilities to Install** window.
- For models that provide XPS driver from the Samsung website, www.samsung.com > find your product> Support or downloads.

Printing to a file (PRN)

You will sometimes need to save the print data as a file.

1

Check the **Print to file** box in the **Print** window.



2

Click **Print**.

3

Type in the destination path and the file name, and then click **OK**.

For example, **c:\Temp\file name**.



If you type in only the file name, the file is automatically saved in **My Documents**, **Documents and Settings**, or **Users**. The saved folder may differ, depending on your operating system or the application you are using.

Printing features

Understanding special printer features

You can use advanced printing features when using your machine.

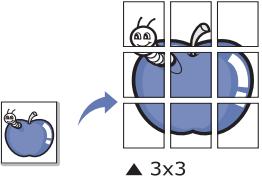
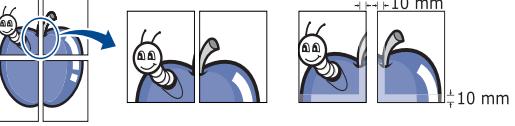
To take advantage of the printer features provided by your printer driver, click **Properties** or **Preferences** in the application's **Print** window to change the print settings. The machine name, that appears in the printer properties window may differ depending on the machine in use.



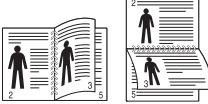
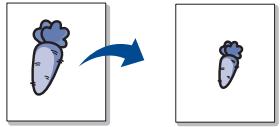
- Some menus may not appear on the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine.
- Select the **Help** menu or click the button from the window or press **F1** on your keyboard and click on any option you want to know about (see "Using help" on page 56).

| Item | Description |
|---|---|
| Multiple Pages per Side An icon showing two pages of a document. The first page has the number '1' and the second page has the number '2'. Both pages show a small preview of the document content. | Selects the number of pages to print on a single sheet of paper. To print more than one page per sheet, the pages will be reduced in size and arranged in the order you specify. You can print up to 16 pages on one sheet. |

Printing features

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| Poster Printing  ▲ 3x3 | <p>Prints a single-page document onto 4 (Poster 2x2), 9 (Poster 3x3), or 16 (Poster 4x4) sheets of paper, for the purpose of pasting the sheets together to form one poster-size document.</p> <p>Select the Poster Overlap value. Specify Poster Overlap in millimeters or inches by selecting the radio button on the upper right of Basic tab to make it easier to paste the sheets together.</p>  |
| Booklet Printing^a  | <p>Prints your document on both sides of a sheet of paper and arranges the pages so that the paper can be folded in half after printing to produce a booklet.</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none">If you want to make a booklet, you need to print on Letter, Legal, A4, US Folio, or Oficio sized print media.The Booklet Printing option is not available for all paper sizes. Select the available paper Size option under the Paper tab to see what paper sizes are available.If you select an unavailable paper size, this option can be automatically canceled. Select only available paper (paper without ! or ✗ mark). |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">Double-sided PrintingDouble-sided Printing (Manual)^a | <p>Print on both sides of a sheet of paper (duplex). Before printing, decide how you want your document oriented.</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none">You can use this feature with Letter, Legal, A4, US Folio or Oficio sized paperIf your machine does not have a duplex unit, you should complete the printing job manually. The machine prints every other page of the document first. After that, a message appears on your computer.Skip Blank Pages feature does not work when you select the duplex option. |

Printing features

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Double-sided Printing• Double-sided Printing (Manual)^a | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Printer Default: If you select this option, this feature is determined by the settings you have selected on the control panel of the machine. This option is available only when you use the PCL/XPS printer driver.• None: Disables this feature.• Long Edge: This option is the conventional layout used in bookbinding. • Short Edge: This option is the conventional layout used in calendars. • Reverse Double-Sided Printing: Check this option to reverse the print order when duplex printing. This option is not available when you use Double-sided Printing (Manual). |
| Paper Options  | Changes the size of a document to appear larger or smaller on the printed page by entering in a percentage by which to enlarge or decrease the document. |
| Watermark  | The watermark option allows you to print text over an existing document. For example, you use it when you want to have large gray letters reading “ DRAFT ” or “ CONFIDENTIAL ” printed diagonally across the first page or all pages of a document. |

Printing features

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| Watermark (Creating a watermark) | <p>a To change the print settings from your software application, access Printing Preferences.</p> <p>b Click the Advanced tab, select Edit from the Watermark drop-down list. The Edit Watermarks window appears.</p> <p>c Enter a text message in the Watermark Message box. You can enter up to 256 characters. The message displays in the preview window.</p> |
| Watermark (Editing a watermark) | <p>a To change the print settings from your software application, access Printing Preferences.</p> <p>b Click the Advanced tab, select Edit from the Watermark drop-down list. The Edit Watermarks window appears.</p> <p>c Select the watermark you want to edit from the Current Watermarks list and change the watermark message and options.</p> <p>d Click Update to save the changes.</p> <p>e Click OK or Print until you exit the Print window.</p> |
| Watermark (Deleting a watermark) | <p>a To change the print settings from your software application, access Printing Preferences.</p> <p>b Click the Advanced tab, select Edit from the Watermark drop-down list. The Edit Watermarks window appears.</p> <p>c Select the watermark you want to delete from the Current Watermarks list and click Delete.</p> <p>d Click OK or Print until you exit the Print window.</p> |
| Overlay ^a  | <p>This option is available only when you use the PCL/SPL printer driver (see "Software" on page 7).</p> <p>An overlay is text and/or images stored in the computer hard disk drive (HDD) as a special file format that can be printed on any document. Overlays are often used to take the place of letterhead paper. Rather than using preprinted letterhead, you can create an overlay containing exactly the same information that is currently on your letterhead. To print a letter with your company's letterhead, you do not need to load preprinted letterhead paper in the machine: just print the letterhead overlay on your document.</p> <p>To use a page overlay, you must create a new page overlay containing your logo or image.</p> <p> • The overlay document size must be the same as the document you print with the overlay. Do not create an overlay with a watermark.</p> <p>• The resolution of the overlay document must be the same as that of the document you will print with the overlay.</p> |

Printing features

| Item | Description |
|--|--|
| Overlay^a (Creating a new page overlay) | <ul style="list-style-type: none">a To save the document as an overlay, access Printing Preferences.b Click the Advanced tab, and select Edit from the Text drop-down list. Edit Overlay window appears.c In the Edit Overlay window, click Create.d In the Save As window, type a name up to eight characters in the File name box. Select the destination path, if necessary (The default is C:\Formover).e Click Save. The name appears on the Overlay List.f Click OK or Print until you exit the Print window. <p>The file is not printed. Instead, it is stored on your computer hard disk drive.</p> |
| Overlay^a (Using a page overlay) | <ul style="list-style-type: none">a Click the Advanced tab.b Select the desired overlay from the Text drop-down list.c If the overlay file you want does not appear in the Text drop-down list, select Edit... from the list and click Load. Select the overlay file you want to use. If you have stored the overlay file you want to use in an external source, you can also load the file when you access the Open window. After you select the file, click Open. The file appears in the Overlay List box and is available for printing. Select the overlay from the Overlay List box.d If necessary, check Confirm Page Overlay When Printing box. If this box is checked, a message window appears each time you submit a document for printing, asking you to confirm printing an overlay on your document. If this box is not checked and an overlay has been selected, the overlay automatically prints with your document.e Click OK or Print until you exit the Print window. |
| Overlay^a (Deleting a page overlay) | <ul style="list-style-type: none">a In the Printing Preferences window, click the Advanced tab.b Select Edit in the Text drop down list.c Select the overlay you want to delete from the Overlay List box.d Click Delete.e When a confirming message window appears, click Yes.f Click OK or Print until you exit the Print window. You can delete page overlays that you no longer use. |

Printing features

| Item | Description |
|----------------|--|
| Print Mode |  <ul style="list-style-type: none">This feature is available only if you have installed the optional memory or mass storage device (HDD) (see "Variety feature" on page 10).Some menus may not appear on the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine. <ul style="list-style-type: none">Print Mode: The default Print Mode is Normal, which is for printing without saving the printing file in the memory.<ul style="list-style-type: none">Normal: This mode prints without storing your document in the optional memory.Proof: This mode is useful when you print more than one copy. You can print one copy first to check, then print the rest of the copies later.Confidential: This mode is used for printing confidential documents. You need to enter a password to print.Store: Select this setting to save a document in the mass storage device (HDD) without printing.Store and Print: This mode is used when printing and storing document at the same time.Spool: This option can be useful when handling large amounts of data. If you select this setting, the printer spools the document into the mass storage device (HDD) and then prints it from the mass storage device (HDD) queue, decreasing the computer's work load.Print Schedule: Select this setting to print the document at a specified time.User ID: This option is used when you need to find a saved file using the control panel.Job Name: This option is used when you need to find a saved file using the control panel. |
| Job Encryption | <p>Encrypts printing data first, and transmits it to the machine. This feature protects the printing information even though the data is snatched on a network.</p>  <p>Job Encryption feature is enabled only when the mass storage device (HDD) is installed. The mass storage device (HDD) is used to decrypt the printing data (see "Variety feature" on page 10).</p> |

a. This option is not available when you use XPS driver.

Printing features

Using Direct Printing Utility



- Direct Printing Utility may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Software" on page 7).
- Available for Windows OS users only.

What is Direct Printing Utility?

Direct Printing Utility is a program that sends the PDF files directly to your machine to print without having to opening the file.

To install this program, select **Advanced Installation > Custom Installation** and put a check mark in this program when you install the printer driver.



- Mass storage device (HDD) should be installed on your machine, to print files using this program. (see "Variety feature" on page 10).
- You cannot print PDF files that are restricted. Deactivate the printing restriction feature and retry printing.
- You cannot print PDF files that are restricted by a password. Deactivate the password feature, and retry printing.
- Whether or not a PDF file can be printed using the Direct Printing Utility program depends on how the PDF file was created.
- The Direct Printing Utility program supports PDF version 1.7 and below. For higher versions, you must open the file to print it.

Printing

There are several ways you can print using the Direct Printing Utility.

- 1 From the **Start** menu select **Programs** or **All Programs > Samsung Printers > Direct Printing Utility > Direct Printing Utility**.
The Direct Printing Utility window appears.
- 2 Select your machine from the **Select Printer** drop-down list and click **Browse**.
- 3 Select the file you wish to print and click **Open**.
The file is added in the **Select Files** section.
- 4 Customize the machine settings for your needs.
- 5 Click **Print**. The selected PDF file is sent to the machine.

Using the right-click menu

- 1 Right-click on the PDF file to print and select **Direct Printing**.
The Direct Printing Utility window appears with the PDF file is added.
- 2 Select the machine to use.
- 3 Customize the machine settings.

Printing features

- Click **Print**. The selected PDF file is sent to the machine.

Macintosh printing



Some features may not be available depending on models or options. It means that the features are not supported.

Printing a document

When you print with a Macintosh, you need to check the printer driver settings in each application you use. Follow the steps below to print from a Macintosh:

- Open the document to print.
- Open the **File** menu and click **Page Setup (Document Setup)** in some applications.
- Choose your paper size, orientation, scaling, other options, and make sure that your machine is selected. Click **OK**.
- Open the **File** menu and click **Print**.
- Choose the number of copies and indicate which pages to print.
- Click **Print**.

Changing printer settings

You can use advanced printing features when using your machine.

Open an application and select **Print** from the **File** menu. The machine name, which appears in the printer properties window, may differ depending on the machine in use. Except for the name, the composition of the printer properties window is similar to the following.

Printing multiple pages on one sheet

You can print more than one page on a single sheet of paper. This feature provides a cost-effective way to print draft copies.

- Open an application, and select **Print** from the **File** menu.
- Select **Layout** from the drop-down list under **Orientation**. In the **Pages per Sheet** drop-down list, select the number of pages you want to print on one sheet of paper.
- Select the other options to use.
- Click **Print**.

The machine prints the selected number of pages to print on one sheet of paper.

Printing features

Printing on both sides of the paper



Some features may not be available depending on models or options. It means that the features are not supported (see "Variety feature" on page 10).

Before printing in the duplex mode, decide on which edge you will be binding your finished document. The binding options are, as follows:

- **Long-Edge Binding:** This option is the conventional layout used in book binding.
- **Short-Edge Binding:** This option is the type often used with calendars.

1 From your Macintosh application, select **Print** from the **File** menu.

2 Select **Layout** from the drop-down list under **Orientation**.

3 Select a binding orientation from the **Two-Sided** option.

4 Select the other options to use.

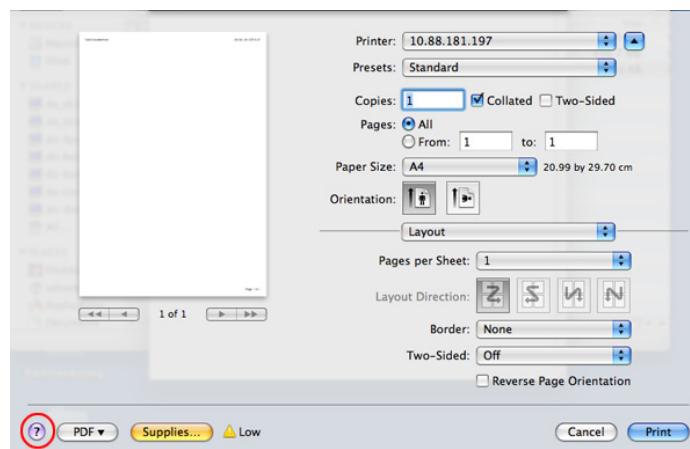
5 Click **Print** and the machine prints on both sides of the paper.



If you print more than 2 copies, the first copy and the second copy might print on the same sheet of paper. Avoid printing on both sides of paper when you are printing more than 1 copy.

Using help

Click the question mark on the bottom-left corner of the window and click on the topic you want to know about. A pop-up window appears with information about that option's feature, which is provided from the driver.



Linux printing



Some features may not be available depending on models or options. It means that the features are not supported.

Printing features

Printing from applications

There are a lot of Linux applications that allow you to print using Common UNIX Printing System (CUPS). You can print on your machine from any such application.

- 1 Open an application, and select **Print** from the **File** menu
- 2 Select **Print** directly using lpr.
- 3 In the LPR GUI window, select the model name of your machine from the printer list and click **Properties**.
- 4 Change the print job properties using the following four tabs displayed at the top of the window.
 - **General:** Changes the paper size, the paper type, and the orientation of the documents. It enables the duplex feature, adds start and end banners, and changes the number of pages per sheet.



Automatic/manual duplex printing may not be available depending on models. You can alternatively use the lpr printing system or other applications for odd-even printing.

- **Text:** Specifies the page margins and set the text options, such as spacing or columns.
- **Graphics:** Sets image options that are used when printing image files, such as color options, image size, or image position.

- **Advanced:** Sets the print resolution, paper source, and destination.

- 5 Click **Apply** to apply the changes and close the **Properties** window.
- 6 Click **OK** in the **LPR GUI** window to start printing.
- 7 The Printing window appears, allowing you to monitor the status of your print job.
To abort the current job, click **Cancel**.

Printing files

You can print many different types of files on your machine using the standard CUPS, directly from the command line interface. The CUPS lpr utility allows you to do that, but the driver's package replaces the standard lpr tool by a much more user-friendly LPR GUI program.

To print any document file:

- 1 Enter lpr <file_name> from the Linux shell command line and press Enter. The **LPR GUI** window appears.
When you type only lpr and press **Enter**, the **Select file(s) to print** window appears first. Just select any files you want to print and click **Open**.
- 2 In the **LPR GUI** window, select your machine from the list, and change the print job properties.
- 3 Click **OK** to start printing.

Printing features

Configuring Printer Properties

Using the **Printer Properties** window provided by the **Printers configuration**, you can change the various properties for your machine as a printer.

1 Open the **Unified Driver Configurator**.

If necessary, switch to **Printers configuration**.

2 Select your machine on the available printers list and click **Properties**.

3 The **Printer Properties** window appears.

The following five tabs display at the top of the window:

- **General:** Allows you to change the printer location and name. The name entered in this tab displays on the printer list in **Printers configuration**.
- **Connection:** Allows you to view or select another port. If you change the machine port from USB to parallel or vice versa while in use, you must re-configure the machine port in this tab.
- **Driver:** Allows you to view or select another machine driver. By clicking **Options**, you can set the default device options.
- **Jobs:** Shows the list of print jobs. Click **Cancel job** to cancel the selected job and select the **Show completed jobs** check box to see previous jobs on the job list.
- **Classes:** Shows the class that your machine is in. Click **Add to Class** to add your machine to a specific class or click **Remove from Class** to remove the machine from the selected class.

- 4** Click **OK** to apply the changes and close the **Printer Properties** window.

Unix printing



Some features may not be available depending on models or options. It means that the features are not supported (see "Features by models" on page 7).

Proceeding the print job

After installing the printer, choose any of the image, text, PS or HPGL files to print.

1 Execute “**printui <file_name_to_print>**” command.

For example, if you are printing “**document1**”

printui document1

This will open the UNIX Printer Driver **Print Job Manager** in which the user can select various print options.

2 Select a printer that has been already added.

3 Select the printing options from the window such as **Page Selection**.

4 Select how many copies are needed in **Number of Copies**.

Printing features



To take advantage of the printer features provided by your printer driver, press **Properties**.

- 5 Press **OK** to start the print job.

Changing the machine settings

The UNIX printer driver **Print Job Manager** in which the user can select various print options in printer **Properties**.

The following hot keys may also be used: "H" for **Help**, "O" for **OK**, "A" for **Apply**, and "C" for **Cancel**.

General tab

- **Paper Size:** Set the paper size as A4, Letter, or other paper sizes, according to your requirements.
- **Paper Type:** Choose the type of the paper. Options available in the list box are **Printer Default**, **Plain**, and **Thick**.
- **Paper Source:** Select from which tray the paper is used. By default, it is **Auto Selection**.
- **Orientation:** Select the direction in which information is printed on a page.
- **Duplex:** Print on both sides of paper to save paper.



Automatic/manual duplex printing may not be available depending on models. You can alternatively use the lpr printing system or other applications for odd-even printing.

- **Multiple pages:** Print several pages on one side of the paper.
- **Page Border:** Choose any of the border styles (e.g., **Single-line hairline**, **Double-line hairline**)

Image tab

In this tab, you can change the brightness, resolution, or image position of your document.

Text tab

Set the character margin, line space, or the columns of the actual print output.

HPGL/2 tab

- **Use only black pen:** To print all graphics in black.
- **Fit plot to page:** Fit the entire graphic into a single page.

Printing features

Margins tab

- **Use Margins:** Set the margins for the document. By default, margins are not enabled. The user can change the margin settings by changing the values in the respective fields. Set by default, these values depend on the page size selected.
- **Unit:** Change the units to points, inches, or centimeters.

Printer-Specific Settings tab

Select various options in the **JCL** and **General** frames to customize various settings. These options are specific to the printer and depend on the PPD file.

Scan features



- For basic scanning features, refer to the Basic Guide (see "Basic scanning" on page 64).
- This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Features by models" on page 7).
- The maximum resolution that can be achieved depends upon various factors, including computer speed, available disk space, memory, the size of the image being scanned, and bit depth settings. Thus, depending on your system and what you are scanning, you may not be able to scan at certain resolutions, especially using enhanced dpi.

Basic scanning method



This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Variety feature" on page 10).

You can scan the originals with your machine via an USB cable or the network. The following methodologies can be used for scanning your documents:

- **Scan to PC:** Scan the originals from the control panel. Then, the scanned data will be stored in the connected computers **My Documents** folder (see "Basic Scanning" on page 64).
- **TWAIN:** TWAIN is the one of a preset imaging applications. Scanning an image launches the selected application, enabling you to control the scanning process. This feature can be used via the local connection or the network connection (see "Scanning from image editing program" on page 247).
- **Samsung Scan Assistant/SmarThru 4/SmarThru Office:** You can use this program to scan images or documents.
 - See "Scanning with Samsung Scan Assistant" on page 248.
 - See "Scanning with SmarThru 4" on page 249
 - See "Scanning with SmarThru Office" on page 249
- **WIA:** WIA stands for Windows Images Acquisition. To use this feature, your computer must be connected directly with the machine via an USB cable (see "Scanning using the WIA driver" on page 248).
- **USB Memory:** You can scan a document and save the scanned image onto an USB memory device.
- **Email:** You can send the scanned image as an email attachment (See "Scanning to email" on page 245).
- **FTP/SMB:** You can scan an image and upload it to an FTP/SMB server (see "Scanning to FTP/SMB server" on page 246).

Scan features

Setting the scan settings in the computer



This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Features by models" on page 7).

- 1** Open **Samsung Easy Printer Manager** (see "Using Samsung Easy Printer Manager" on page 274).
- 2** Select the appropriate machine from the **Printer List**.
- 3** Select **Scan to PC Settings** menu.
- 4** Select the option you want.
 - **Scan Activation:** Determines whether or not scanning is enabled on the device.
 - **Basic tab:** Contains settings related to general scan and device settings.
 - **Image tab:** Contains settings related to image altering.
- 5** Press **Save > OK**.

Scanning from network connected machine



The machine that does not support the network interface, it will not be able to use this feature (see "Rear view" on page 23).

Make sure the printer driver is installed on your computer using the software CD, since the printer driver includes the scan program (see "Installing the driver locally" on page 30).

- 1** Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder (see "Loading originals" on page 50).

- 2** Select **(Scan) > Scan to PC > Network PC** on the control panel. Or select **Scan > Network PC** on the touch screen.



If you see **Not Available** message, check the port connection.

- 3** Select your registered computer **ID**, and enter the **Password** if necessary.

Scan features

- **ID** is the same ID as the registered scan ID for **Samsung Easy Printer Manager** >  Switch to advanced mode > **Scan to PC Settings**.
- **Password** is the 4 digit number registered password for **Samsung Easy Printer Manager** >  Switch to advanced mode > **Scan to PC Settings**.

- 4 Select the option you want and press **OK**.
- 5 Scanning begins.

 Scanned image is saved in computer's **C:\Users\users name\My Documents**. The saved folder may differ, depending on your operating system or the application you are using.

Scanning to email

 This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Features by models" on page 7).

Setting up an email account

- 1 Access the SyncThru™ Web Service (see "Using SyncThru™ Web Service" on page 271).
- 2 Select **Settings > Network Settings** and **Outgoing Mail Server(SMTP)**.
- 3 Enter the IP address in dotted decimal notation or as a host name.
- 4 Enter the server port number, from 1 to 65535.
- 5 Check the box next to **SMTP Requires Authentication** to require authentication.
- 6 Enter the SMTP server login name and password.
- 7 Press **Apply**.

- 
- If the authentication method of SMTP server is POP3 before SMTP, put a check mark of **SMTP Requires POP Before SMTP Authentication**.
 - Enter the IP address and port number.

Scan features

Scanning and sending an email

- 1 Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder (see "Loading originals" on page 50).
- 2 Select  (scan) > **Scan to Email** on the control panel.
Or select **Scan** > **Send Email** on the touch screen.
- 3 Enter the login name and password if you configured on SyncThru™ Web Service (see "Using SyncThru™ Web Service" on page 271).
- 4 Enter the sender's and recipient's email address.



You can send an email to yourself by activating the **Auto Send To Self** option in the **Settings > Scan > Scan To E-mail** on SyncThru™ Web Service.

- 5 Enter an email subject and press **OK**.
- 6 Select the file format to scan, and press **OK**.
- 7 Enter the SMTP server login name and password.
- 8 The machine begins scanning and then sends the email.

Scanning to FTP/SMB server



This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Features by models" on page 7).

Setting up an FTP/SMB server

- 1 Access the SyncThru™ Web Service (see "Using SyncThru™ Web Service" on page 271).
- 2 Select **Address Book > Individual > Add**.
- 3 Check the box next to **Add FTP** or **Add SMB**.
- 4 Enter the IP address in dotted decimal notation or as a host name.
- 5 Enter the server port number, from 1 to 65535.
- 6 Check the box next to **Anonymous**, then the server permits the access of unauthorized people.
- 7 Enter the login name and password.
- 8 Enter the domain name if your server is joined to the certain domain, otherwise just enter your computer name which is registered to the SMB server.

Scan features

9 Enter the path for saving the scanned image.



- The folder to save the scanned image must be on the root.
- The folder properties need to be setup as a share.
- Your user name should have the rights to read and write the folder.

10 Press **Apply**.

Scanning and sending to FTP/SMB server

1 Make sure that your machine is connected to a network.

2 Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder (see "Loading originals" on page 50).

3 Select  (scan) > **Scan to SMB** or **Scan to FTP** on the control panel.

Or select **Scan** > **SMB** or **FTP** on the touch screen.

4 Select a server and scan format you want.

5 The machine begins scanning and then sends the scanned image to the specified server.

Scanning from image editing program

You can scan and import documents at the image editing software such as Adobe Photoshop, if the software is TWAIN-compliant. Follow the steps below to scan with TWAIN-compliant software:

1 Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.

2 Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder (see "Loading originals" on page 50).

3 Open an application, such as Adobe Photoshop.

4 Click **File** > **Import**, and select the scanner device.

5 Set the scan options.

6 Scan and save your scanned image.

Scan features

Scanning using the WIA driver

Your machine supports the Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) driver for scanning images. WIA is one of the standard components provided by Microsoft Windows 7 and works with digital cameras and scanners. Unlike the TWAIN driver, the WIA driver allows you to scan and easily adjust images without using additional software:



The WIA driver works only on Windows OS (not supported Windows 2000) with a USB port.

- 1** Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
- 2** Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder (see "Loading originals" on page 50).
- 3** Click **Start > Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Devices and Printers**.
- 4** Right-click on device driver icon in **Printers and Faxes > Start Scan**.
- 5** **New Scan** application appears.

- 6** Choose your scanning preferences and click **Preview** to see your preferences affect the picture.
- 7** Scan and save your scanned image.

Scanning with Samsung Scan Assistant



- This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Features by models" on page 7).
- You can use the OCR (Optical Character Reader) feature from Samsung Scan Assistant program.

- 1** Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
- 2** Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder (see "Loading originals" on page 50).
- 3** Click **Start > All programs > Samsung Printers**, and start **Samsung Scan Assistant**.



Select the **Help** menu or click the button from the window and click on any option you want to know about.

Scan features

4 Set the scan options.

5 Click **Scan**.

Scanning with SmarThru 4



- This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Features by models" on page 7).
- You can use the OCR (Optical Character Reader) feature from SmarThru 4 program.

1 Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.

2 Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder (see "Loading originals" on page 50).

3 Double-click the **SmarThru 4** icon.

4 The SmarThru appears.

- **Scan to:** You can scan an image and save it to an application or folder, email it, or publish it on a web site.
- **Image:** You can edit an image and send it to a selected application or folder, email it, or publish it on a web site.

- **Print:** You can print images you have saved.



Select the **Help** menu or click the button from the window and click on any option you want to know about.

5 Click **Scan to**.

6 Select destination among **Application**, **E-mail**, **Folder**, **OCR**, or **Web**.

7 If needed, click **Settings** to customize the settings.

8 Click **Scan**.

Scanning with SmarThru Office



- This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Features by models" on page 7).
- To use SmarThru Office, you have to install the program manually from the supplied CD. Select **Advanced Installation** > **Custom Installation** and choose SmarThru Office to install.
- You can use the OCR (Optical Character Reader) feature from SmarThru Office program.

Scan features

- 1 Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
- 2 Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder (see "Loading originals" on page 50).
- 3 Double-click the **SmarThru Office** icon.
- 4 The **SmarThru Office** appears.



Click the **Help** or button from the window and click on any option you want to know about.

- 5 Click the **SmarThru Office** icon () in the tray area of the Windows taskbar to activate the **SmarThru Office** launcher.
- 6 Click the scanning icon () to open the scanning window.
- 7 The **Scan Setting** window opens.
- 8 Set scan settings and click **Scan**.

Macintosh scanning

Scanning from USB connected machine

- 1 Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
 - 2 Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder (see "Loading originals" on page 50).
 - 3 Start **Applications** and click **Image Capture**.
- If **No Image Capture device connected** message appears, disconnect the USB cable and reconnect it. If the problem continues, refer to the **Image Capture**'s help.
- 4 Select the option you want.
 - 5 Scan and save your scanned image.

If scanning does not operate in **Image Capture**, update Mac OS to the latest version. **Image Capture** operates properly in Mac OS X 10.4.7 or higher.

Scan features

Scanning from network connected machine



Network or wireless model only (see "Features by models" on page 7).

- 1** Make sure that your machine is connected to a network.
- 2** Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder (see "Loading originals" on page 50).
- 3** Start **Applications** and click **Image Capture**.
- 4** According to OS, follow steps below.
 - For 10.4
 - Click **Devices > Browse Devices** on Menu bar.
 - Select your machine in Twain devices option. Make sure that **Use TWAIN software** checkbox is checked.
 - Click **Connect**.
 - If a warning message appears, click **Change Port..** to select port, or If TWAIN UI appears, click **Change Port..** from the **Preference** tab and select a new port.
 - For 10.5
 - Click **Devices > Browse Devices** on Menu bar.
 - Make sure that **Connected** checkbox is checked beside your machine in **Bonjour Devices**.

- If you want to scan using TWAIN, refer to the Mac OS X10.4 steps above.

- For 10.6 -10.7, select your device below **SHARED**.

5 Set the scan options on this program.

6 Scan and save your scanned image.



- If scanning does not operate in Image Capture, update Mac OS to the latest version. Image Capture operates properly Mac OS X 10.4.7 or higher.
- For more information, refer to the **Image Capture**'s help.
- You can also scan using TWAIN-compliant software, such as Adobe Photoshop.

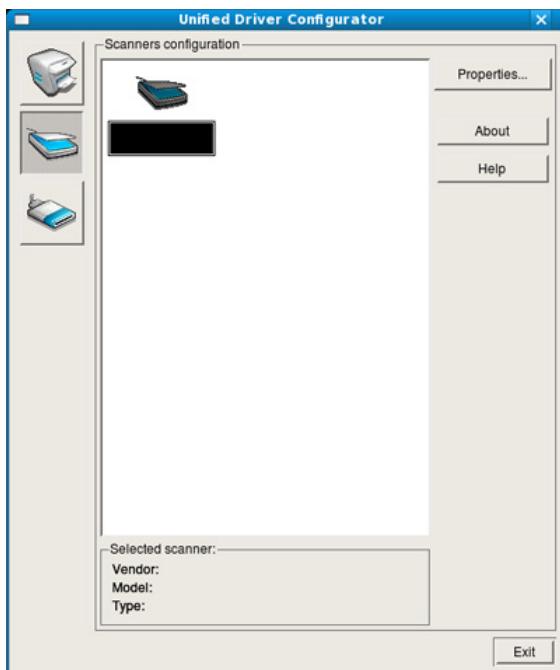
Linux scanning

Scanning

- 1** Make sure that the machine is connected to your computer and powered on.
- 2** Double-click the **Unified Driver Configurator** on your desktop.
- 3** Click the button to switch to Scanners Configuration.

Scan features

- 4 Select the scanner on the list.

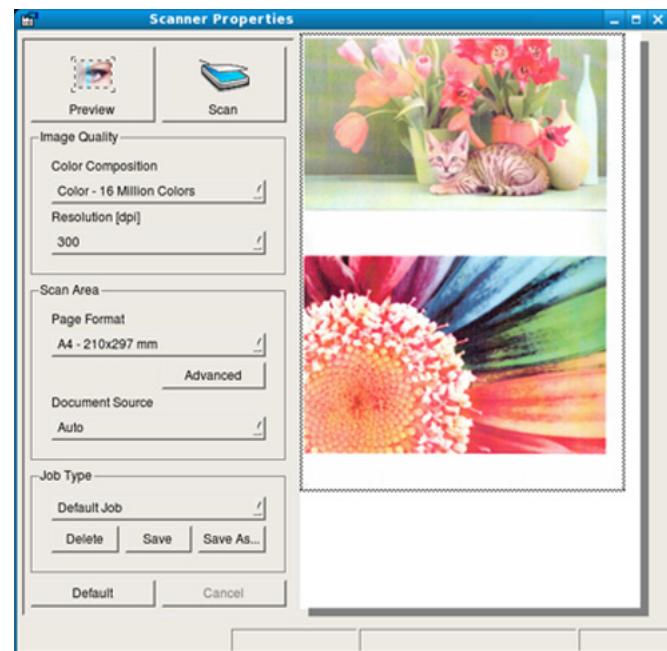


- 5 Click **Properties**.

- 6 Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder (see "Loading originals" on page 50).

- 7 From the **Scanner Properties** window, click **Preview**.

- 8 The document is scanned and the image preview appears in the **Preview Pane**.



- 9 Drag the pointer to set the image area to be scanned in the **Preview Pane**.

- 10 Select the option you want.

- 11 Scan and save your scanned image.

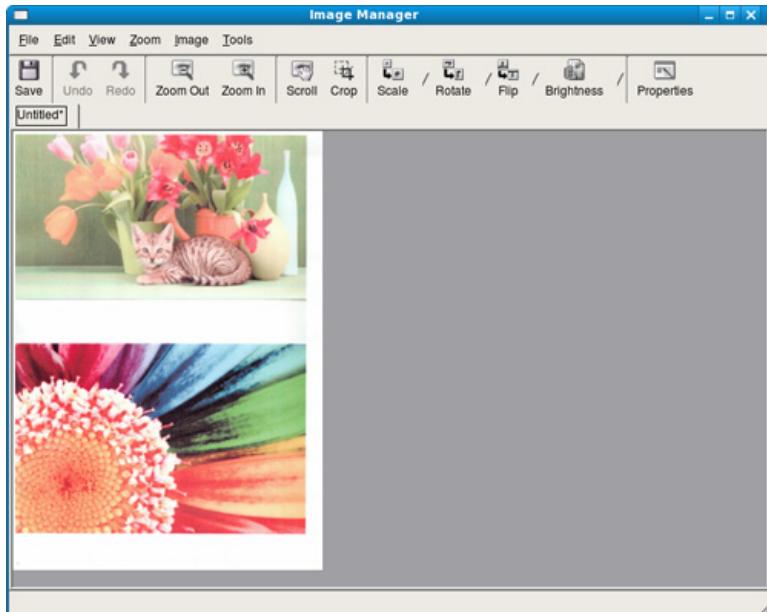


For later use, you can save as your scan settings and add it to the **Job Type** drop-down list.

Scan features

Editing an image with Image Manager

The Image Manager application provides you with menu commands and tools to edit your scanned image.



Fax features



- For basic faxing features, refer to the Basic Guide (see "Basic faxing" on page 65).
- This function is not supported for SCX-340x/SCX-340xW Series (see "Control panel overview" on page 24).

Automatic redialing

When the number you have dialed is busy or there is no answer when you send a fax, the machine automatically redials the number. The redial time depends on the country's factory default setting.

When the display shows **Retry Redial?**, press (Start) button to redial the number without waiting. To cancel the automatic redialing, press (Cancel) or **Stop/Clear**.

To change the time interval between redials and the number of redial attempts.

- 1 Press (fax) > (Menu) > **Fax Setup** > **Sending** on the control panel.
- 2 Select **Redial Times** or **Redial Term** you want.
- 3 Select the option you want.

Redialing the fax number

- 1 Press (Redial/Pause) button on the control panel.
- 2 Select the fax number you want.
Ten recently sent fax numbers with ten received Caller IDs are shown.
- 3 When an original is loaded in the document feeder, the machine automatically begins to send.
If an original is placed on the scanner glass, select **Yes** to add another page. Load another original and press **OK**. When you have finished, select **No** when **Another Page?** appears.

Confirming a transmission

When the last page of your original has been sent successfully, the machine beeps and returns to ready mode.

When something goes wrong while sending your fax, an error message appears on the display. If you receive an error message, press (Cancel or Stop/Clear) to clear the message and try to send the fax again.

Fax features



You can set your machine to print a confirmation report automatically each time sending a fax is completed. Press (fax) > (Menu) > **Fax Setup** > **Sending** > **Send Report** on the control panel.

Sending a fax in the computer



This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Features by models" on page 7).

You can send a fax from your computer without going to the machine.

To send a fax from your computer, the **Samsung Network PC Fax** program must be installed. This program will be installed when you installed the printer driver.

1 Open the document to be sent.

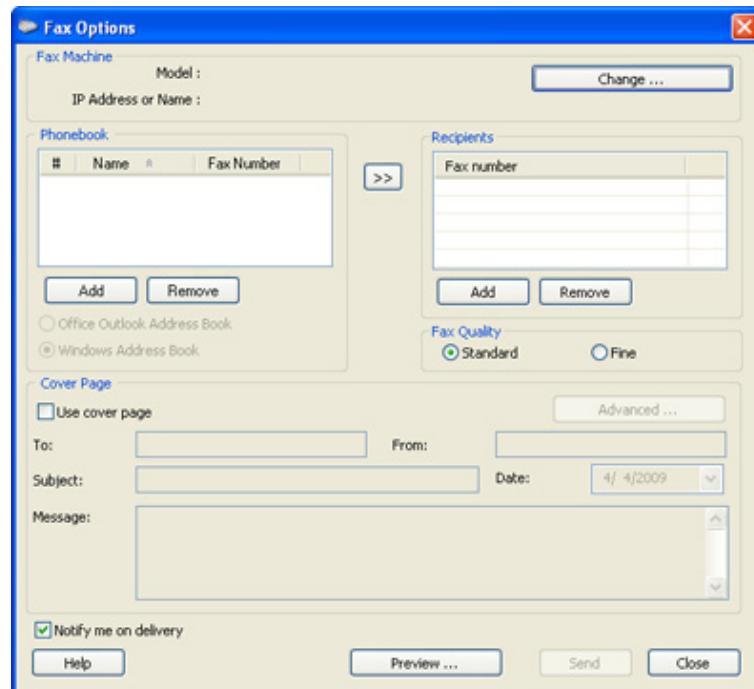
2 Select **Print** from the **File** menu.

The **Print** window will be displayed. It may look slightly different depending on your application.

3 Select **Samsung Network PC Fax** from the **Print** window

4 Click **Print** or **OK**.

5 Enter the recipients' numbers and select the option



Select the **Help** menu or click the button from the window and click on any option you want to know about.

6 Click **Send**.

Fax features

Delaying a fax transmission

You can set your machine to send a fax at a later time when you will not be present. You cannot send a color fax using this feature.

- 1 Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder.
- 2 Press  (fax) on the control panel.
- 3 Adjust the resolution and the darkness to suit your fax needs.
- 4 Press  (Menu) > **Fax Feature** > **Delay Send** on the control panel.
Or select **Fax** > **Delayed Send** > **To** on the touch screen.
- 5 Enter the number of the receiving fax machine and press **OK**.
- 6 The display asks you to enter another fax number to send the document.
- 7 To enter more fax numbers, press **OK** when **Yes** highlights and repeat steps 5.



- You can add up to 10 destinations.
- Once you entered a group dial number, you cannot enter another group dial numbers anymore.

- 8 Enter the job name and the time.



If you set a time earlier than the current time, the fax will be sent at that time on the following day.

- 9 The original is scanned into memory before transmission.
The machine returns to ready mode. The display reminds you that you are in ready mode and that a delayed fax is set.



You can check the list of delayed fax jobs.

Press  (Menu) > **System Setup** > **Report** > **Schedule Jobs** on the control panel.

Adding documents to a reserved fax

- 1 Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder.
- 2 Press  (fax) >  (Menu) > **Fax Feature** > **Add Page** on the control panel.
- 3 Select the fax job and press **OK**.
When you have finished, select **No** when **Another Page?** appears. The machine scans the original into memory.

Fax features

- 4 Press  **(Cancel or Stop/Clear)** to return to ready mode.

Canceling a reserved fax job

- 1 Press  (fax) >  (Menu) > **Fax Feature** > **Cancel Job** on the control panel.
- 2 Select the fax job you want and press **OK**.
- 3 Press **OK** when **Yes** highlights.
The selected fax is deleted from memory.
- 4 Press  **(Stop/Clear)** to return to ready mode.

Sending a priority fax

This function is used when a high priority fax need to be sent ahead of reserved operations. The original is scanned into memory and immediately transmitted when the current operation is finished.

- 1 Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder.
- 2 Press  (Fax) >  (Menu) > **Fax Feature** > **Priority Send** on the control panel.
Or select **Fax** > **Priority Send** > **To** on the touch screen.
- 3 Enter the destination fax number and press **OK**.
- 4 Enter the job name and press **OK**.
- 5 If an original is placed on the scanner glass, select **Yes** to add another pages. Load another original and press **OK**.
When you have finished, select **No** when **Another Page?** appears.
The machine starts to scan and send a fax to destinations.

Forwarding a sent fax to another destination

You can set the machine to forward the received or sent fax to other destination by a fax, an email or a server. If you are out of office but have to receive the fax, this feature may be useful.

Fax features



- When you forward a fax by an email, you must first set the mail server and IP address in SyncThru™ Web Service (see "Using SyncThru™ Web Service" on page 271).
- Though you sent or received a color fax, the data is forwarded in grayscale.

1 Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder.

2 Press (fax) > (Menu) > **Fax Feature** > **Forward** > **Fax** > **Send Forward** > **On** on the control panel.

Or select **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Fax Setup** > **Forward** > **Fax, Email**, or **Server** > **Send Forward** > **On** on the touch screen.



Forward options may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Variety feature" on page 10).

3 Enter the destination fax number, email address, or server address and press **OK**.

4 Press (Cancel or Stop/Clear) to return to ready mode.

Subsequent sent faxes will be forwarded to the specified fax machine.

Forwarding a received fax

You can set the machine to forward the received or sent fax to other destination by a fax, an email or a server. If you are out of office but have to receive the fax, this feature may be useful.



Though you sent or received a color fax, the data is forwarded in grayscale.

1 Press (fax) > (Menu) > **Fax Feature** > **Forward** > **Fax, E-mail**, or **Server** > **Receive Forward** or **RCV Forward** > **Forward** on the control panel.

Or select **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Fax Setup** > **Forward** > **Fax, Email**, or **Server** > **Receive Forward** or **RCV Forward** > **On** on the touch screen.



- Forward** options may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Variety feature" on page 10).
- To set the machine to print out a fax when fax forwarding has been completed, select **Forward&Print**.

2 Enter the destination fax number, email address, or server address and press **OK**.

3 Enter the starting time and ending time, then press **OK**.

Fax features

4 Press  **(Cancel or Stop/Clear)** to return to ready mode.

Subsequent sent faxes will be forwarded to the specified fax machine.

Sending faxes on both sides of paper



- This is available only when you load originals into the document feeder.
- Some menus may not appear on the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine.
- This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Features by models" on page 7).

1 Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder.

2 Press  **(fax) > Duplex** on the control panel.

Or select **Fax** > Select the menu you want > Select **Duplex** from the sub-menus > on the touch screen.

- **Off:** Send faxes in normal mode.
- **2 Side:** Send faxes on both sides of the original.
- **2->1Side ROT2:** Send faxes on both sides of the original and prints each one on a separate sheet, but the information on the back side of the printout is rotated 180°.

3 Press **OK**.

Receiving a fax in the computer



- This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Features by models" on page 7).
- To use this feature, set the option on the control panel:
Press  **(fax) > (Menu) > Fax Feature > Forward > PC > On** on the control panel.
Or select **Setup > Machine Setup > Next > Fax Setup > Forward > PC > On** on the touch screen.

1 Open the Samsung Easy Printer Manager.

2 Select the appropriate machine from the **Printer List**.

3 Select **Fax to PC Settings** menu.

4 Use **Enable Fax Receiving from Device** to change the fax settings.

- **Image Type:** Convert the received faxes to PDF or TIFF.
- **Save Location:** Select location to save the converted faxes.
- **Prefix:** Select prefix.

Fax features

- **Print received fax:** After receiving the fax, set prints information for the received fax.
- **Notify me when complete:** Set to show the popup window to notify receiving a fax.
- **Open with default application:** After receiving the fax, open it with default application.
- **None:** After receiving a fax, the machine does not notify the user or opens the application.

5 Press **Save > OK**.

Changing the receive modes

1 Press  (fax) >  (Menu) > **Fax Setup > Receiving > Receive Mode** on the control panel.

Or select **Setup > Machine Setup > Next > Default Setting > Fax Default > Common > Receive Mode** on the touch screen.

2 Select the option you want.

- **Fax:** Answers an incoming fax call and immediately goes into the fax reception mode.
- **Tel:** Receives a fax by pressing  (On Hook Dial) and then  (Start) button.

- **Ans/Fax:** Is for when an answering machine attached to your machine. Your machine answers an incoming call, and the caller can leave a message on the answering machine. If the fax machine senses a fax tone on the line, the machine automatically switches to Fax mode to receive the fax.



To use the **Ans/Fax** mode, attach an answering machine to the EXT socket on the back of your machine.

- **DRPD:** You can receive a call using the Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection (DRPD) feature. Distinctive Ring is a telephone company service which enables an user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. For further details, see "Receiving faxes using DRPD mode" on page 261.



This setting may not be available depending on your country.

3 Press **OK**.

4 Press  (Cancel or Stop/Clear) to return to ready mode.

Fax features

Receiving manually in Tel mode

You can receive a fax call by pressing  (On Hook Dial) button and then pressing  (Start) when you hear a fax tone. If your machine has a handset, you can answer calls using the handset (see "Features by models" on page 7).

Receiving in Answering Machine/Fax mode

To use this mode, you must attach an answering machine to the EXT socket on the back of your machine. If the caller leaves a message, the answering machine stores the message. If your machine detects a fax tone on the line, it automatically starts to receive the fax.



- If you have set your machine to this mode and your answering machine is switched off, or no answering machine is connected to EXT socket, your machine automatically goes into Fax mode after a predefined number of rings.
- If the answering machine has a user-selectable ring counter, set the machine to answer incoming calls within 1 ring.
- If the machine is in Tel mode, disconnect or switch off the answering machine with the fax machine. Otherwise, the outgoing message from the answering machine will interrupt your phone conversation.

Receiving faxes with an extension telephone

When you are using an extension telephone connected to the EXT socket, you can receive a fax from someone you are talking to on the extension telephone, without going to the fax machine.

When you receive a call on the extension phone and hear fax tones, press the keys *9* on the extension phone. The machine receives the fax.

9 is the remote receive code preset at the factory. The first and the last asterisks are fixed, but you can change the middle number to whatever you want.



While you are talking over the telephone connected to the EXT socket, copy and scan features are not available.

Receiving faxes using DRPD mode

This setting may not be available depending on your country. Distinctive Ring is a telephone company service which enables an user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers. This feature is often used by answering services who answer telephones for many different clients and need to know which number someone is calling in on to properly answer the phone.

Fax features



This setting may not be available depending on your country.

- 1 Select (fax) > (Menu) > **Fax Setup** > **Receiving** > **DRPD Mode** > **Waiting Ring** on the control panel.

Or select **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Next** > **Default Setting** > **Fax Default** > **Common** > **Receive Mode** > **DRPD** on the touch screen.

- 2 Call your fax number from another telephone.

- 3 When your machine begins to ring, do not answer the call. The machine requires several rings to learn the pattern.

When the machine completes learning, the display shows **Completed DRPD Setup**. If the DRPD setup fails, **Error DRPD Ring** appears.

- 4 Press **OK** when DRPD appears and start over from step 2.



- DRPD must be set up again if you re-assign your fax number, or connect the machine to another telephone line.
- After DRPD has been set up, call your fax number again to verify that the machine answers with a fax tone. Then have a call placed to a different number assigned to that same line to be sure the call is forwarded to the extension telephone or answering machine plugged into the EXT socket.

Receiving in secure receiving mode



This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Features by models" on page 7).

You may need to prevent your received faxes from being accessed by unauthorized people. Turn on secure receiving mode, then all incoming faxes go into memory. You can print the incoming faxes with entering the password.



To use the secure receiving mode, activate the menu from (fax) > (Menu) > **Fax Feature** > **Secure Receive** on the control panel.

Or select **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Next** > **Fax Setup** > **Secure Receive** on the touch screen.

Printing received faxes

- 1 Select (fax) > (Menu) > **Fax Feature** > **Secure Receive** > **Print** on the control panel.

Or select **Setup** > **Machine Setup** > **Next** > **Fax Setup** > **Secure Receive** > **Print** on the touch screen.

- 2 Enter a four-digit password and press **OK**.

Fax features

- 3** The machine prints all of the faxes stored in memory.

Printing faxes on both sides of the paper

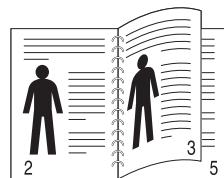


- Some menus may not appear on the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine.
- This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Features by models" on page 7).

- 1** Place a single document face down on the document glass, or load the documents face up into the document feeder.

- 2** Press (fax) > (Menu) > **Fax Setup** > **Receiving** > **Duplex Print** on the control panel.

- Off:** Prints in Normal mode.
- Long Edge:** Prints pages to be read like a book.



- Short Edge:** Prints pages to be read by flipping like a note pad.



- 3** Press **OK**.

- 4** Press (Cancel or Stop/Clear) to return to ready mode.

Receiving faxes in memory

Since your machine is a multi-tasking device, it can receive faxes while you are making copies or printing. If you receive a fax while you are copying or printing, your machine stores incoming faxes in its memory. Then, as soon as you finish copying or printing, the machine automatically prints the fax.



If fax is received and being printed, other copy and print jobs cannot be processed at the same time.

Fax features

Printing sent fax report automatically

You can set the machine to print a report with detailed information about the previous 50 communication operations, including time and dates.

- 1** Press  (fax) >  (Menu) > **Fax Setup** > **Auto Report** > **On** on the control panel.
- 2** Press  (Cancel or Stop/Clear) to return to ready mode.

Using shared folder features

This feature allows you to use the machine's memory as a shared folder. The advantage of this feature is that you can conveniently use the shared folder through your computer's window.



- This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Features by models" on page 7).
- You can use this feature in the models that have a mass storage device (see "Variety feature" on page 10).
- The administrator can set the ID and password to restrict the user's access and also set the maximum number of simultaneous users.

Using the shared folder

You can use the shared folder in the same way exactly like the normal computer. Create, edit and delete the folder or file as a normal Windows folder. You also store the scanned data in the shared folder. You can directly print files stored on the shared folder. You can print TIFF, BMP, JPEG and PRN files.

Creating a shared folder

- 1 Open the Windows Explore window from the computer.
- 2 Enter the printer's **WW[ip address]** (example: **WW169.254.133.42**) in the address field, and press the Enter key or click **Go**.
- 3 Create a new folder under **nfsroot** directory.

Using memory/hard drive features



You can use this feature in the models that have a mass storage device (HDD) or memory (see "Variety feature" on page 10).

Setting up the optional memory

From the printer driver

After installing the optional memory, you can use advanced printing features, such as proofing a job and specifying of printing a private job in the **Print** window. Select **Properties** or **Preference**, and configure the printing mode.

From the control panel

If your machine has optional memory or an optional hard drive, you can use these features from the (Menu) button > **System Setup** > **Job Management**.

- **Active Job:** All of the print jobs waiting to be printed are listed in the active job queue in the order you sent them to the printer. You can delete a job from the queue before printing, or promote a job to print sooner.
- **File Policy:** You can choose the file policy for generating file name before you proceed with the job through optional memory. If the optional memory already has the same name when you entered a new file name, you can rename or overwrite it.
- **Stored Job:** You can print or delete a stored job.



- Some menus may not appear on the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine.
- After installing the hard drive, you can also print the predefined document templates from the (Menu) button > **System Setup** > **Form Menu**.



5. Useful Management Tools

This chapter introduces management tools provided to help you make full use of your machine.

- **Easy Capture Manager**
- **Samsung AnyWeb Print**
- **Easy Eco Driver**
- **Using SyncThru™ Web Service**
- **Using Samsung Easy Printer Manager**
- **Using Samsung Printer Status**
- **Using Smart Panel**
- **Using the Linux Unified Driver Configurator**

268

269

270

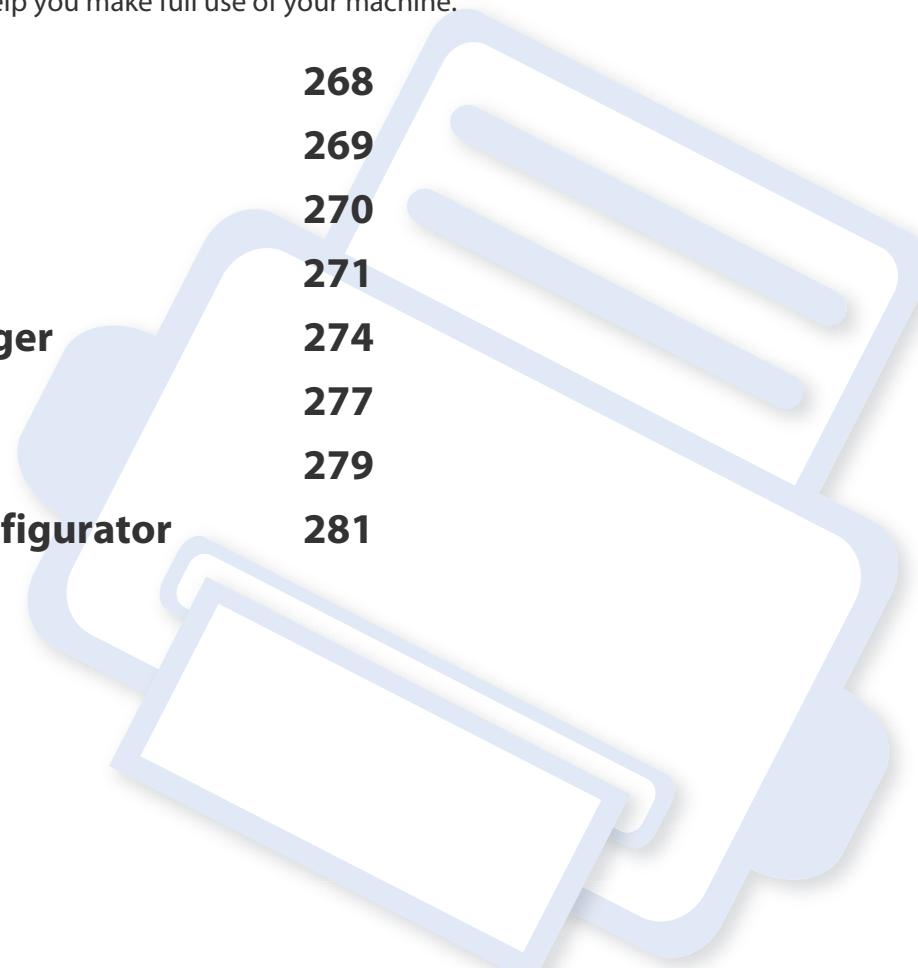
271

274

277

279

281



Easy Capture Manager



- This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Software" on page 7).
- Available for Windows OS users only (see "Software" on page 7).

Capture your screen and launch Easy Capture Manager by simply pressing the Print Screen key. Now you can easily print your captured screen as captured or edited.

Samsung AnyWeb Print



- This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Software" on page 7).
- Available for Windows and Macintosh OS users only (see "Software" on page 7).

This tool helps you screen-capture, preview, scrap, and print Windows Internet Explorer pages more easily, than when you use an ordinary program. Click **Start > All programs > Samsung Printers > Samsung AnyWeb Print > Download the latest version** to link to the website where the tool is available for download.

Easy Eco Driver



- This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Software" on page 7).
- Available for Windows OS users only (see "Software" on page 7).

With the Easy Eco Driver, you can apply Eco features to save paper and toner before printing. To use this application, **Start Easy Eco Driver before printing job** checkbox in the printer properties should be checked.

Easy Eco Driver also allows you simple editing such as removing images and texts, changing fonts, and more. You can save frequently used settings as a preset.

How to use:

- 1 Open a document to print.
- 2 Print the document.
A preview window appears.
- 3 Select the options you want to apply to the document.
You can see the preview of the applied features.
- 4 Click **Print**.

Using SyncThru™ Web Service



- Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher is the minimum requirement for SyncThru™ Web Service.
- SyncThru™ Web Service explanation in this user's guide may differ from your machine depending on its options or models.
- Network model only (see "Software" on page 7).

Accessing SyncThru™ Web Service

- 1 Access a web browser, such as Internet Explorer, from Windows.

Enter the machine IP address of your printer (<http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx>) in the address field and press the Enter key or click **Go**.

- 2 Your machine's embedded website opens.

Logging into SyncThru™ Web Service

Before configuring options in SyncThru™ Web Service, you need to log-in as an administrator. You can still use SyncThru™ Web Service without logging in but you won't have access to **Settings** tab and **Security** tab.

- 1 Click **Login** on the upper right of the SyncThru™ Web Service website.
- 2 Type in the **ID** and **Password** then click **Login**.
 - **ID: admin**
 - **Password: sec00000**

SyncThru™ Web Service overview



Information

Settings

Security

Maintenance



Some tabs may not appear depending on your model.

Information tab

This tab gives you general information about your machine. You can check things, such as remaining amount of toner. You can also print reports, such as an error report.

- **Active Alerts:** Shows the alerts that have occurred in the machine and their severity.
- **Supplies:** Shows how many pages are printed and amount of toner left in the cartridge.

Using SyncThru™ Web Service

- **Usage Counters:** Shows the usage count by print types: simplex and duplex.
- **Current Settings:** Shows the machine's and network's information.
- **Print information:** Prints reports such as system related reports, e-mail address, and font reports.

Settings tab

This tab allows you to set configurations provided by your machine and network. You need to log-in as an administrator to view this tab.

- **Machine Settings** tab: Sets options provided by your machine.
- **Network Settings** tab: Shows options for the network environment. Sets options such as TCP/IP and network protocols.

Security tab

This tab allows you to set system and network security information. You need to log-in as an administrator to view this tab.

- **System Security:** Sets the system administrator's information and also enables or disables machine features.
- **Network Security:** Sets settings for HTTPS, IPSec, IPv4/IPv6 filtering, 802.1x, and Authentication servers.

- **User Access Control:** Classifies users into several groups according to each user's role. Each user's authorization, authentication and accounting will be controlled by the group's role definition.

Maintenance tab

This tab allows you to maintain your machine by upgrading firmware and setting contact information for sending emails. You can also connect to Samsung website or download drivers by selecting the **Link** menu.

- **Firmware Upgrade:** Upgrade your machine's firmware.
- **Contact Information:** Shows the contact information.
- **Link:** Shows links to useful sites where you can download or check information.

E-mail notification setup

You can receive emails about your machine's status by setting this option. By setting information such as IP address, host name, e-mail address and SMTP server information, the machine status (toner cartridge shortage or machine error) will be sent to a certain person's e-mail automatically. This option may be used more frequently by a machine administrator.

Using SyncThru™ Web Service



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine.

- 1 Start a web browser, such as Internet Explorer, from Windows.
Enter the machine IP address (<http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx>) in the address field and press the Enter key or click **Go**.
- 2 Your machine's embedded website opens.
- 3 From the **Settings** tab, select **Machine Settings > E-mail Notification**.

 If you have not configured outgoing server environment, go to **Settings > Network Settings > Outgoing Mail Server(SMTP)** to configure network environment before setting e-mail notification.
- 4 Select **Enable** check box to use the **E-mail Notification**.
- 5 Click **Add** button to add e-mail notification user.
Set the recipient name and e-mail address(es) with notification items you want to receive an alert for.
- 6 Click **Apply**.



If the firewall is activated, the e-mail may not be sent successfully. In that case, contact the a network administrator.

Setting the system administrator's information

This setting is necessary for using the e-mail notification option.



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine.

- 1 Start a web browser, such as Internet Explorer, from Windows.
Enter the machine IP address (<http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx>) in the address field and press the Enter key or click **Go**.
- 2 Your machine's embedded website opens.
- 3 From the **Security** tab, select **System Security > System Administrator**
- 4 Enter the name of the administrator, phone number, location, and email address.
- 5 Click **Apply**.

Using Samsung Easy Printer Manager



- This feature may not be available depending on model or optional goods (see "Software" on page 7).
- Available for Windows and Macintosh OS users only (see "Software" on page 7).
- For Windows, Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher is the minimum requirement for Samsung Easy Printer Manager.

Samsung Easy Printer Manager is an application that combines Samsung machine settings into one location. Samsung Easy Printer Manager combines device settings as well as printing environments, settings/actions and launching. All of these features provide a gateway to conveniently use your Samsung machine. Samsung Easy Printer Manager provides two different user interfaces for the user to choose from: the basic user interface and the advanced user interface. Switching between the two interfaces is easy: just click a button.

Understanding Samsung Easy Printer Manager

To open the program:

For Windows,

Select **Start > Programs or All Programs > Samsung Printers > Samsung Easy Printer Manager > Samsung Easy Printer Manager.**

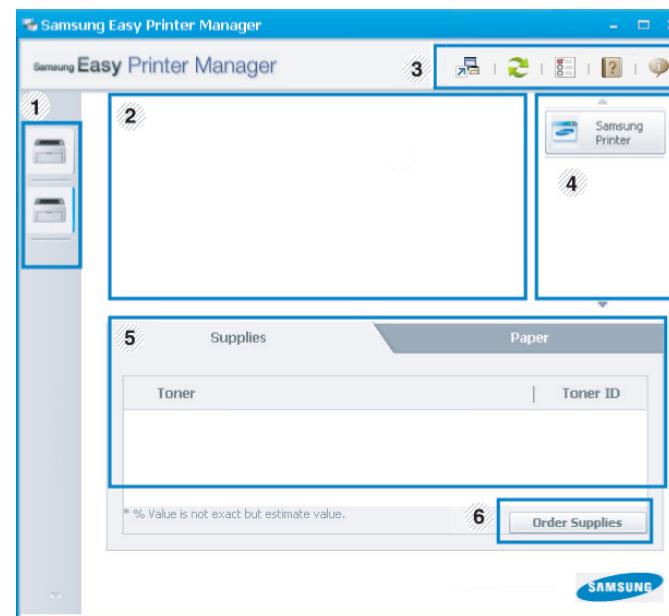
For Macintosh,

Open the **Applications** folder > **Samsung** folder > **Samsung Easy Printer Manager**.

The Samsung Easy Printer Manager interface is comprised of various basic sections as described in the table that follows:



The screenshot may differ depending on operating system you are using.



| | | |
|---|--------------|---|
| 1 | Printer list | The Printer List displays printers installed on your computer and network printers added by network discovery (Windows only). |
|---|--------------|---|

Using Samsung Easy Printer Manager

| | | |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| Printer information 2 | This area gives you general information about your machine. You can check information, such as the machine's model name, IP address (or Port name), and machine status. | |
| 2 |  You can view the online User's Guide . Troubleshooting button: This button opens the Troubleshooting Guide when an error occurs. You can directly open the necessary section in the user's guide. |  If you connect your machine to a network, the SyncThru™ Web Service icon is enabled. |
| Application information 3 | Includes links for changing to the advanced settings, preference, help, and about.  The  button is used to change the user interface to the advanced settings user interface (see "Advanced settings user interface overview" on page 275). |  Select the Help menu or click the  button from the window and click on any option you want to know about. |
| 4 | Quick links | Displays Quick links to machine specific functions. This section also includes links to applications in the advanced settings. |
| 5 | Contents area | Displays information about the selected machine, remaining toner level, and paper. The information will vary based on the machine selected. Some machines do not have this feature. |
| 6 | Order supplies | Click on the Order button from the supply ordering window. You can order replacement toner cartridge(s) from online. |

Advanced settings user interface overview

The advanced user interface is intended to be used by the person responsible for managing the network and machines.

Using Samsung Easy Printer Manager



Some menus may not appear in the display depending on options or models. If so, it is not applicable to your machine.

Device Settings

You can configure various machine settings such as machine setup, paper, layout, emulation, network, and print information.

Scan to PC Settings

This menu includes settings to create or delete scan to PC profiles.

- **Scan Activation:** Determines whether or not scanning is enabled on the device.
- **Basic tab:** Contains settings related general scan and device settings.
- **Image tab:** Contains settings related to image altering.

Fax to PC Settings

This menu includes settings related to the basic fax functionality of the selected device.

- **Disable:** If **Disable** is **On**, incoming faxes will not be received on this device.
- **Enable Fax Receiving from Device:** Enables faxing on the device and allow more options to be set.

Alert Settings (Windows only)

This menu includes settings related to error alerting.

- **Printer Alert:** Provides settings related to when alerts will be received.
- **Email Alert:** Provides options relating to receiving alerts via email.
- **Alert History:** Provides a history of device and toner related alerts.

Job Accounting

Provides querying of quota information of the specified job accounting user. This quota information can be created and applied to devices by job accounting software such as SyncThru™ or CounThru™ admin software.

Using Samsung Printer Status

The Samsung Printer Status is a program that monitors and informs you of the machine status.



- The Samsung Printer Status window and its contents shown in this user's guide may differ depending on the machine or operating system in use.
- Check the operating system(s) that are compatible with your machine (see "Specifications" on page 107).
- Available for Windows OS users only (see "Software" on page 7).

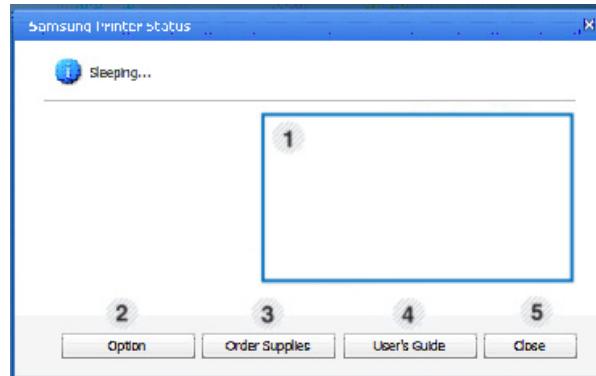
Samsung Printer Status overview

If an error occurs while operating, you can check the error from the Samsung Printer Status. Samsung Printer Status is installed automatically when you install the machine software.

You can also launch Samsung Printer Status manually. Go to the **Printing Preferences**, click the **Basic** tab > **Printer Status** button.

These icons appear on the Windows task bar:

| Icon | Mean | Description |
|------|---------|---|
| | Normal | The machine is in ready mode and experiencing no errors or warnings. |
| | Warning | The machine is in a state where an error might occur in the future. For example, it might be in toner low status, which may lead to toner empty status. |
| | Error | The machine has at least one error. |



| | | |
|---|--------------------|---|
| 1 | Toner Level | You can view the level of toner remaining in each toner cartridge. The machine and the number of toner cartridge(s) shown in the above window may differ depending on the machine in use. Some machines do not have this feature. |
| 2 | Option | You can set printing job alert related settings. |

Using Samsung Printer Status

| | | |
|---|-----------------------|--|
| 3 | Order Supplies | You can order replacement toner cartridge(s) from online. |
| 4 | User's Guide | You can view the online User's Guide.  This button opens the Troubleshooting Guide when an error occurs. You can directly open the troubleshooting section in the user's guide. |
| 5 | Close | Close the window. |

Using Smart Panel

Smart Panel is a program that monitors and informs you of the machine's status, and allows you to customize the machine's settings. You can download Smart Panel from the Samsung website (see "Installing the Smart Panel" on page 136).



- The Smart Panel window and its contents shown in this user's guide may differ depending on the machine or operating system in use.
- Check the operating system(s) that are compatible with your machine (see "Specifications" on page 107).
- The Smart Panel is available for Linux OS users only (see "Software" on page 7).

Smart Panel overview

If an error occurs while operating, you can check the error from the Smart Panel. You can also launch Smart Panel manually.

Double-click the Smart Panel icon() in the Notification Area.



| | |
|------------------------|---|
| Toner Level | You can view the level of toner remaining in each toner cartridge. The machine and the number of toner cartridge(s) shown in the above window may differ depending on the machine in use. If you cannot see this feature, it is not applicable to your machine. |
| Buy Now | You can order replacement toner cartridge(s) from online. |
| User's Guide | You can view the online User's Guide. |
| Printer Setting | This button opens the Troubleshooting Guide when an error occurs. You can directly open the troubleshooting section in the user's guide. You can configure various machine settings in the Printer Settings Utility window. Some machines do not have this feature. |



This button opens the **Troubleshooting Guide** when an error occurs. You can directly open the troubleshooting section in the user's guide.



If you connect your machine to a network, the SyncThru™ Web Service window appears instead of the Printer Settings Utility.

Using Smart Panel

Changing Smart Panel's settings

Right-click in Linux on the Smart Panel icon and select **Configure smart panel**.

Select the settings you want from the **Configure smart panel** window.

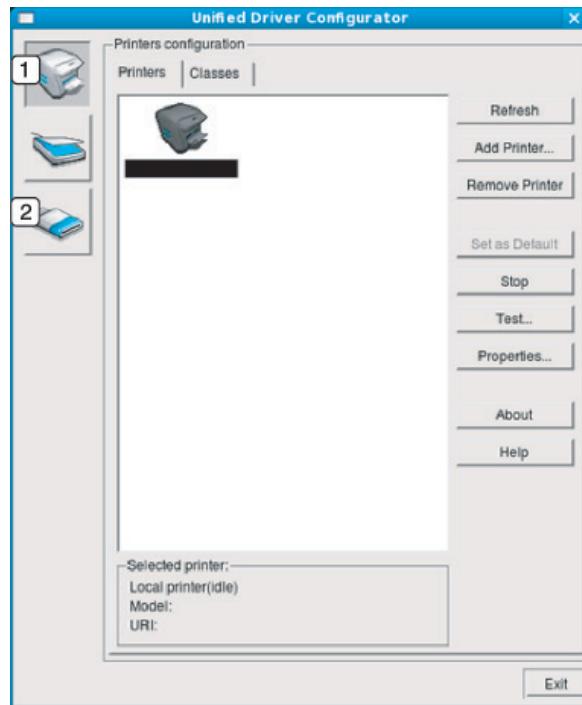
Using the Linux Unified Driver Configurator

The Unified Driver Configurator is a tool primarily intended for configuring machine devices. You need to install Unified Linux Driver to use Unified Driver Configurator (see "Installation for Linux" on page 136).

After the driver is installed on your Linux system, the Unified Driver Configurator icon will automatically be created on your desktop.

Opening Unified Driver Configurator

- 1 Double-click the **Unified Driver Configurator** on the desktop.
You can also click the **Startup Menu** icon and select **Samsung Unified Driver > Unified Driver Configurator**.
- 2 Click each button on the left to switch to the corresponding configuration window.



- 1 **Printer Configuration**
- 2 **Port Configuration**

Using the Linux Unified Driver Configurator



To use the on screen help, the **Help** or button from the window.

3

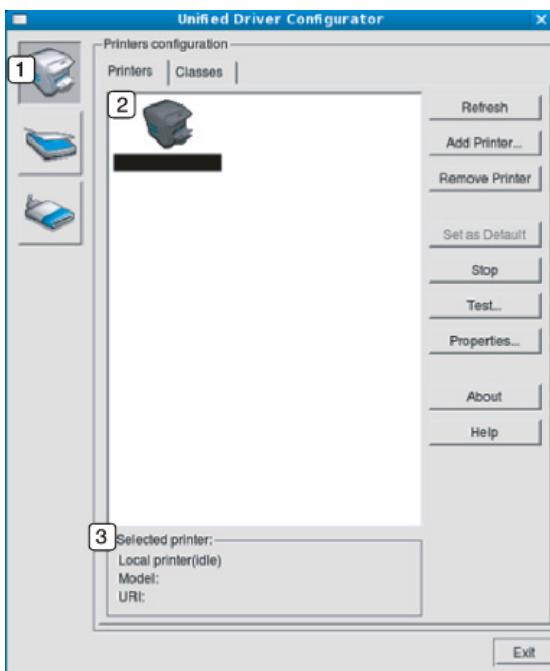
After changing the configurations, click **Exit** to close the **Unified Driver Configurator**.

Printers configuration

Printers configuration has the two tabs: **Printers** and **Classes**.

Printers tab

View the current system's printer configuration by clicking on the machine icon button on the left side of the **Unified Driver Configurator** window.



1 Switches to **Printers configuration**.

2 Shows all of the installed machines.

3 Shows the status, model name, and URI of your machine.

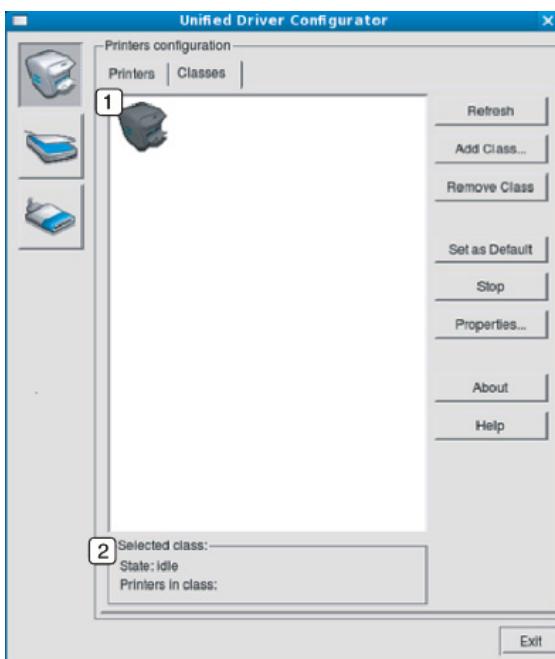
Using the Linux Unified Driver Configurator

The printer control buttons are, as follows:

- **Refresh:** Renews the available machines list.
- **Add Printer:** Allows you to add a new machines.
- **Remove Printer:** Removes the selected machine.
- **Set as Default:** Sets the current selected machine as a default machine.
- **Stop/Start:** Stops/starts the machine.
- **Test:** Allows you to print a test page to ensure the machine is working properly.
- **Properties:** Allows you to view and change the printer's properties.

Classes tab

The Classes tab shows a list of available machine classes.



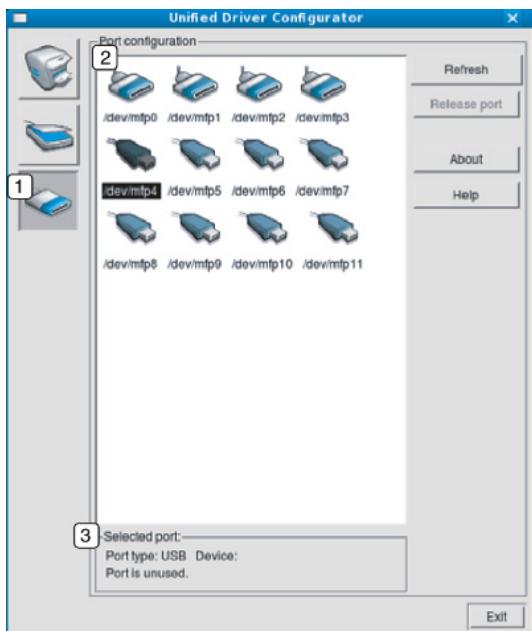
- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 | Shows all of the machine classes. |
| 2 | Shows the status of the class and the number of machines in the class. |

- **Refresh:** Renews the classes list.
- **Add Class:** Allows you to add a new machine class.
- **Remove Class:** Removes the selected machine class.

Using the Linux Unified Driver Configurator

Ports configuration

In this window, you can view the list of available ports, check the status of each port and release a port that is stalled in a busy state when its owner has terminated the job for any reason.



- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 | Switches to Ports configuration . |
| 2 | Shows all of the available ports. |
| 3 | Shows the port type, device connected to the port, and status. |
- **Refresh:** Renews the available ports list.
 - **Release port:** Releases the selected port.



6. Troubleshooting

This chapter gives helpful information for what to do if you encounter an error.

- **Paper feeding problems**
- **Power and cable connecting problems**
- **Printing problems**
- **Printing quality problems**
- **Copying problems**
- **Scanning problems**
- **Faxing problems**
- **Operating system problems**

286

287

288

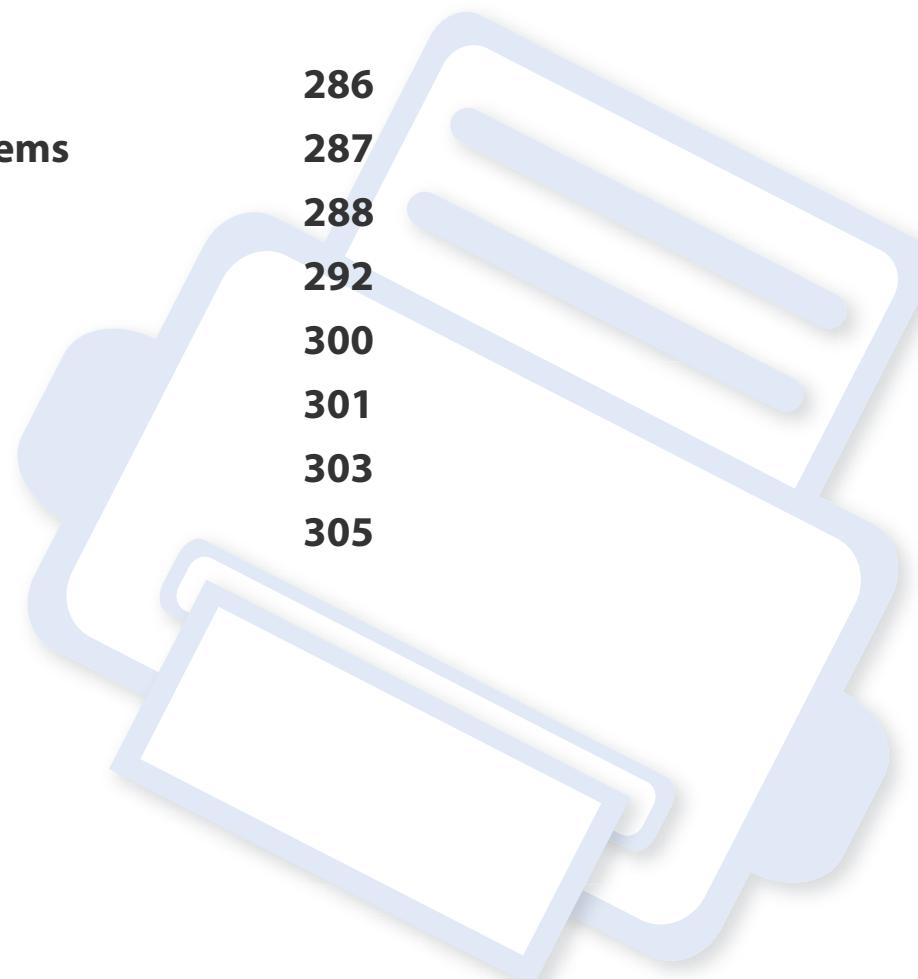
292

300

301

303

305



Paper feeding problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|--|---|
| Paper jams during printing. | Clear the paper jam. |
| Paper sticks together. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Check the maximum paper capacity of the tray.Make sure that you are using the correct type of paper.Remove paper from the tray and flex or fan the paper.Humid conditions may cause some paper to stick together. |
| Multiple sheets of paper do not feed. | Different types of paper may be stacked in the tray. Load paper of only one type, size, and weight. |
| Paper does not feed into the machine. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Remove any obstructions from inside the machine.Paper has not been loaded correctly. Remove paper from the tray and reload it correctly.There is too much paper in the tray. Remove excess paper from the tray.The paper is too thick. Use only paper that meets the specifications required by the machine. |
| The paper keeps jamming. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">There is too much paper in the tray. Remove excess paper from the tray. If you are printing on special materials, use the manual feeding in tray.An incorrect type of paper is being used. Use only paper that meets the specifications required by the machine.There may be debris inside the machine. Open the front cover and remove any debris. |
| Envelopes skew or fail to feed correctly. | Ensure that the paper guides are against both sides of the envelopes. |

Power and cable connecting problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|--|---|
| The machine is not receiving power, or the connection cable between the computer and the machine is not connected properly. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Connect the machine to the electricity supply first. If the machine has a  (Power) button on the control, press it.• Disconnect the machine's cable and reconnect it. |

Printing problems

| Condition | Possible cause | Suggested solutions |
|------------------------------------|--|---|
| The machine does not print. | The machine is not receiving power. The machine is not selected as the default machine. Check the machine for the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The cover is not closed. Close the cover.• Paper is jammed. Clear the paper jam (see "Clearing paper jams" on page 95).• No paper is loaded. Load paper (see "Loading paper in the tray" on page 42).• The toner cartridge is not installed. Install the toner cartridge (see "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 77).• Make sure the protect cover and sheets are removed from the toner cartridge (see "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 77). If a system error occurs, contact your service representative. | Connect the machine to the electricity supply first. If the machine has a  (Power) button on the control, press it. Select your machine as your default machine in Windows. |
| | The connection cable between the computer and the machine is not connected properly. | Disconnect the machine cable and reconnect it (see "Rear view" on page 23). |
| | The connection cable between the computer and the machine is defective. | If possible, attach the cable to another computer that is working properly and print a job. You can also try using a different machine cable. |
| | The port setting is incorrect. | Check the Windows printer settings to make sure that the print job is sent to the correct port. If the computer has more than one port, make sure that the machine is attached to the correct one. |

Printing problems

| Condition | Possible cause | Suggested solutions |
|---|---|---|
| The machine does not print. | The machine may be configured incorrectly. | Check the Printing Preferences to ensure that all of the print settings are correct. |
| | The printer driver may be incorrectly installed. | Uninstall and reinstall the machine's driver. |
| | The machine is malfunctioning. | Check the display message on the control panel to see if the machine is indicating a system error. Contact a service representative. |
| | The document size is so big that the hard disk space of the computer is insufficient to access the print job. | Get more hard disk space and print the document again. |
| | The output tray is full. | Once the paper is removed from the output tray, the machine resumes printing. |
| The machine selects print materials from the wrong paper source. | The paper option that was selected in the Printing Preferences may be incorrect. | For many software applications, the paper source selection is found under the Paper tab within the Printing Preferences (see "Opening printing preferences" on page 55). Select the correct paper source. See the printer driver help screen (see "Using help" on page 56). |
| A print job is extremely slow. | The job may be very complex. | Reduce the complexity of the page or try adjusting the print quality settings. |
| Half the page is blank. | The page orientation setting may be incorrect. | Change the page orientation in your application (see "Opening printing preferences" on page 55). See the printer driver help screen (see "Using help" on page 56). |
| | The paper size and the paper size settings do not match. | Ensure that the paper size in the printer driver settings matches the paper in the tray. Or, ensure that the paper size in the printer driver settings matches the paper selection in the software application settings you use (see "Opening printing preferences" on page 55). |
| The machine prints, but the text is wrong, garbled, or incomplete. | The machine cable is loose or defective. | Disconnect the machine cable and reconnect. Try a print job that you have already printed successfully. If possible, attach the cable and the machine to another computer that you know works and try a print job. Finally, try a new machine cable. |

Printing problems

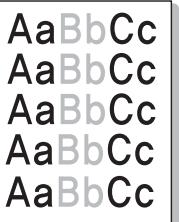
| Condition | Possible cause | Suggested solutions |
|---|--|---|
| | The wrong printer driver was selected. | Check the application's printer selection menu to ensure that your machine is selected. |
| | The software application is malfunctioning. | Try printing a job from another application. |
| | The operating system is malfunctioning. | Exit Windows and reboot the computer. Turn the machine off and back on again. |
| Pages print, but they are blank. | The toner cartridge is defective or out of toner. | <p>Redistribute the toner, if necessary. If necessary, replace the toner cartridge.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• See "Redistributing toner" on page 75.• See "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 77. |
| | The file may have blank pages. | Check the file to ensure that it does not contain blank pages. |
| | Some parts, such as the controller or the board, may be defective. | Contact a service representative. |
| | Incompatibility between the PDF file and the Acrobat products. | Printing the PDF file as an image may enable the file to print. Turn on Print As Image from the Acrobat printing options.  It will take longer to print when you print a PDF file as an image. |
| The print quality of photos is not good. Images are not clear. | The resolution of the photo is very low. | Reduce the photo size. If you increase the photo size in the software application, the resolution will be reduced. |
| Before printing, the machine emits vapor near the output tray. | Using damp paper can cause vapor during printing. | This is not a problem. Just keep printing. |

Printing problems

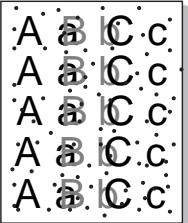
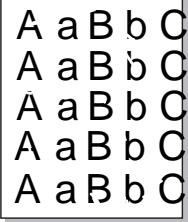
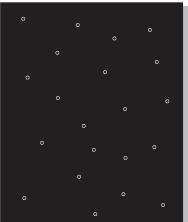
| Condition | Possible cause | Suggested solutions |
|---|---|--|
| The machine does not print special-sized paper, such as billing paper. | Paper size and paper size setting do not match. | Set the correct paper size in the Custom in Paper tab in Printing Preferences (see "Opening printing preferences" on page 55). |
| The printed billing paper is curled. | The paper type setting does not match. | Change the printer option and try again. Go to Printing Preferences , click Paper tab, and set type to Thick (see "Opening printing preferences" on page 55). |

Printing quality problems

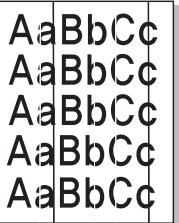
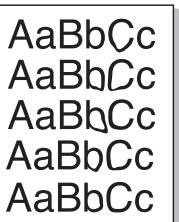
If the inside of the machine is dirty or paper has been loaded improperly, there might be a reduction in print quality. See the table below to clear the problem.

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|--|---|
| Light or faded print   | <ul style="list-style-type: none">If a vertical white streak or faded area appears on the page, the toner supply is low. Install a new toner cartridge (see "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 77).The paper may not meet paper specifications; for example, the paper may be too moist or rough.If the entire page is light, the print resolution setting is too low or the toner save mode is on. Adjust the print resolution and turn the toner save mode off. See the help screen of the printer driver.A combination of faded or smeared defects may indicate that the toner cartridge needs cleaning. Clean the inside of your machine (see "Cleaning the machine" on page 81).The surface of the LSU part inside the machine may be dirty. Clean the inside of your machine (see "Cleaning the machine" on page 81). If these steps do not correct the problem, contact a service representative. |
| The top half of the paper is printed lighter than the rest of the paper    | <p>The toner might not adhere properly to this type of paper.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Change the printer option and try again. Go to Printing Preferences, click the Paper tab, and set the paper type to Recycled (see "Opening printing preferences" on page 55). |

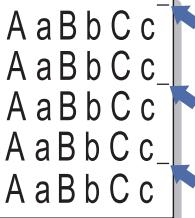
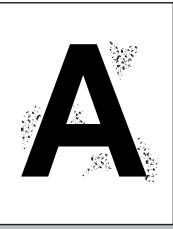
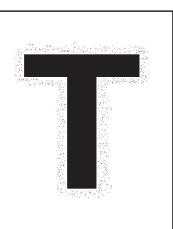
Printing quality problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|--|--|
| Toner specks  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">The paper may not meet specifications; for example, the paper may be too moist or rough.The transfer roller may be dirty. Clean the inside of your machine (see "Cleaning the machine" on page 81).The paper path may need cleaning. Contact a service representative (see "Cleaning the machine" on page 81). |
| Dropouts  | <p>If faded areas, generally rounded, occur randomly on the page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">A single sheet of paper may be defective. Try reprinting the job.The moisture content of the paper is uneven or the paper has moist spots on its surface. Try a different brand of paper.The paper lot is bad. The manufacturing processes can cause some areas to reject toner. Try a different kind or brand of paper.Change the printer option and try again. Go to Printing Preferences, click the Paper tab, and set type to Thick (see "Opening printing preferences" on page 55). <p>If these steps do not correct the problem, contact a service representative.</p> |
| White Spots  | <p>If white spots appear on the page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">The paper is too rough and a lot of dirt from paper falls to the inner components within the machine, so the transfer roller may be dirty. Clean the inside of your machine (see "Cleaning the machine" on page 81).The paper path may need cleaning. Clean the inside of your machine (see "Cleaning the machine" on page 81). <p>If these steps do not correct the problem, contact a service representative.</p> |

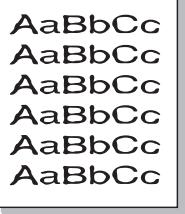
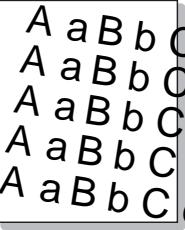
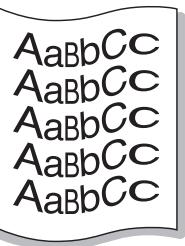
Printing quality problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|--|---|
| Vertical lines  | <p>If black vertical streaks appear on the page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">The surface (drum part) of the toner cartridge inside the machine has probably been scratched. Remove the toner cartridge and install a new one (see "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 77). <p>If white vertical streaks appear on the page:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">The surface of the LSU part inside the machine may be dirty. Clean the inside of your machine (see "Cleaning the machine" on page 81). If these steps do not correct the problem, contact a service representative. |
| Black or color background  | <p>If the amount of background shading becomes unacceptable:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Change to a lighter weight paper.Check the environmental conditions: very dry conditions or a high level of humidity (higher than 80% RH) can increase the amount of background shading.Remove the old toner cartridge and install a new one (see "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 77).Thoroughly redistribute the toner (see "Redistributing toner" on page 75). |
| Toner smear  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Clean the inside of the machine (see "Cleaning the machine" on page 81).Check the paper type and quality.Remove the toner cartridge and install a new one (see "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 77). |

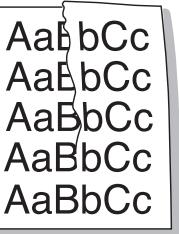
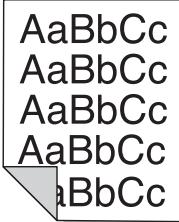
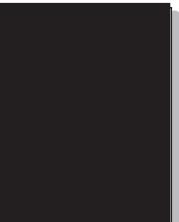
Printing quality problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|---|---|
| Vertical repetitive defects  | <p>If marks repeatedly appear on the printed side of the page at even intervals:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">The toner cartridge may be damaged. If you still have the same problem, remove the toner cartridge and, install a new one (see "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 77).Parts of the machine may have toner on them. If the defects occur on the back of the page, the problem will likely correct itself after a few more pages.The fusing assembly may be damaged. Contact a service representative. |
| Background scatter  | <p>Background scatter results from bits of toner randomly distributed on the printed page.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">The paper may be too damp. Try printing with a different batch of paper. Do not open packages of paper until necessary so that the paper does not absorb too much moisture.If background scatter occurs on an envelope, change the printing layout to avoid printing over areas that have overlapping seams on the reverse side. Printing on seams can cause problems. Or select Thick from the Printing Preferences window (see "Opening printing preferences" on page 55).If background scatter covers the entire surface area of a printed page, adjust the print resolution through your software application or in Printing Preferences (see "Opening printing preferences" on page 55). Ensure the correct paper type is selected. For example: If Thicker Paper is selected, but Plain Paper actually used, an overcharging can occur causing this copy quality problem.If you are using a new toner cartridge, redistribute the toner first (see "Redistributing toner" on page 75). |
| Toner particles are around bold characters or pictures  | <p>The toner might not adhere properly to this type of paper.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Change the printer option and try again. Go to Printing Preferences, click the Paper tab, and set the paper type to Recycled (see "Opening printing preferences" on page 55).Ensure the correct paper type is selected. For example: If Thicker Paper is selected, but Plain Paper actually used, an overcharging can occur causing this copy quality problem. |

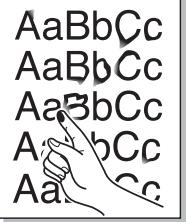
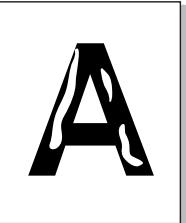
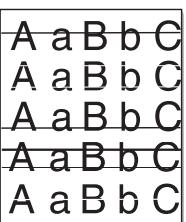
Printing quality problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|---|--|
| Misformed characters  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">If characters are improperly formed and producing hollow images, the paper stock may be too slick. Try different paper. |
| Page skew  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Ensure that the paper is loaded properly.Check the paper type and quality.Ensure that the guides are not too tight or too loose against the paper stack. |
| Curl or wave  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Ensure that the paper is loaded properly.Check the paper type and quality. Both high temperature and humidity can cause paper curl.Turn the stack of paper over in the tray. Also try rotating the paper 180° in the tray. |

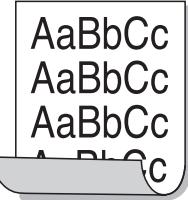
Printing quality problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|---|--|
| Wrinkles or creases  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Ensure that the paper is loaded properly.• Check the paper type and quality.• Turn the stack of paper over in the tray. Also try rotating the paper 180° in the tray. |
| Back of printouts are dirty  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check for leaking toner. Clean the inside of the machine (see "Cleaning the machine" on page 81). |
| Solid color or black pages  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The toner cartridge may not be installed properly. Remove the cartridge and reinsert it.• The toner cartridge may be defective. Remove the toner cartridge and install a new one (see "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 77).• The machine may require repairing. Contact a service representative. |

Printing quality problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|---|---|
| Loose toner  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Clean the inside of the machine (see "Cleaning the machine" on page 81).• Check the paper type and quality.• Remove the toner cartridge and then, install a new one (see "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 77). <p>If the problem persists, the machine may require repair. Contact a service representative.</p> |
| Character voids  | <p>Character voids are white areas within parts of characters that should be solid black:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• You may be printing on the wrong surface of the paper. Remove the paper and turn it around.• The paper may not meet paper specifications. |
| Horizontal stripes  | <p>If horizontally aligned black streaks or smears appear:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The toner cartridge may be installed improperly. Remove the cartridge and reinsert it.• The toner cartridge may be defective. Remove the toner cartridge and install a new one (see "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 77). <p>If the problem persists, the machine may require repairing. Contact a service representative.</p> |

Printing quality problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|---|---|
| Curl  | <p>If the printed paper is curled or paper does not feed into the machine:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Turn the stack of paper over in the tray. Also try rotating the paper 180° in the tray.Change the printer's paper option and try again. Go to Printing Preferences, click the Paper tab, and set type to Thin (see "Opening printing preferences" on page 55). |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">An unknown image repetitively appears on a few sheetsLoose tonerLight print or contamination occurs | <p>Your machine is probably being used at an altitude of 1,000 m (3,281 ft) or above. The high altitude may affect the print quality, such as loose toner or light imaging. Change the altitude setting for your machine (see "Altitude adjustment" on page 220).</p> |

Copying problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|---|---|
| Copies are too light or too dark. | Adjust the darkness in copy feature to lighten or darken the backgrounds of copies (see "Changing the settings for each copy" on page 59). |
| Smears, lines, marks, or spots appear on copies. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the defects are on the original, adjust darkness in copy feature to lighten the background of your copies.• If there are no defects on the original, clean the scan unit (see "Cleaning the scan unit" on page 85). |
| Copy image is skewed. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Ensure that the original is aligned with the registration guide.• The transfer roller may be dirty. Clean the inside of your machine (see "Cleaning the machine" on page 81). |
| Blank copies print out. | <p>Ensure that the original is face down on the scanner glass or face up in the document feeder.</p> <p>If these steps do not correct the problem, contact a service representative.</p> |
| Image rubs off the copy easily. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Replace the paper in the tray with paper from a new package.• In high humidity areas, do not leave paper in the machine for extended periods of time. |
| Frequent copy paper jams occur. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Fan the paper, then turn it over in the tray. Replace the paper in the tray with a fresh supply. Check/adjust the paper guides, if necessary.• Ensure that the paper is the proper type and weight (see "Print media specifications" on page 109).• Check for copy paper or pieces of copy paper remaining in the machine after a paper jam has been cleared. |
| Toner cartridge produces fewer copies than expected before running out of toner. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Your originals may contain pictures, solids, or heavy lines. For example, your originals may be forms, newsletters, books, or other documents that use more toner.• The scanner lid may be left open while copies are being made.• Turn the machine off and back on. |

Scanning problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|------------------------------------|--|
| The scanner does not work. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Make sure that you place the original to be scanned face down on the scanner glass, or face up in the document feeder (see "Loading originals" on page 50).• There may not be enough available memory to hold the document you want to scan. Try the Prescan function to see if that works. Try lowering the scan resolution rate.• Check that the machine printer cable is connected properly.• Make sure that the machine printer cable is not defective. Switch the printer cable with a known good cable. If necessary, replace the printer cable.• Check that the scanner is configured correctly. Check scan setting in the SmarThru Office or the application you want to use to make certain that the scanner job is being sent to the correct port (for example, USB001). |
| The unit scans very slowly. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check if the machine is printing received data. If so, scan the document after the received data has been printed.• Graphics are scanned more slowly than text.• Communication speed slows in scan mode because of the large amount of memory required to analyze and reproduce the scanned image. Set your computer to the ECP printer mode through BIOS setting. It will help to increase the speed. For details about how to set BIOS, refer to your computer user's guide. |

Scanning problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|--|---|
| <p>Message appears on your computer screen:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Device can't be set to the H/W mode you want.Port is being used by another program.Port is disabled.Scanner is busy receiving or printing data. When the current job is completed, try again.Invalid handle.Scanning has failed. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">There may be a copying or printing job in progress. Try your job again when that job is finished.The selected port is currently being used. Restart your computer and try again.The machine printer cable may be improperly connected or the power may be off.The scanner driver is not installed or the operating environment is not set up properly.Ensure that the machine is properly connected and the power is on, then restart your computer.The USB cable may be improperly connected or the power may be off. |

Faxing problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|---|---|
| The machine is not working, there is no display, or the buttons are not working. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Unplug the power cord and plug it in again.Ensure that there is power being supplied to the electrical outlet.Ensure that the power is turned on. |
| No dial tone. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Check that the phone line is properly connected (see "Rear view" on page 23).Check that the phone socket on the wall is working by plugging in another phone. |
| The numbers stored in memory do not dial correctly. | Make sure that the numbers are stored in memory correctly. To check that, print an address book list. |
| The original does not feed into the machine. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Make sure that the paper is not wrinkled and you are inserting it in correctly. Check that the original is the right size, not too thick or thin.Make sure that the document feeder is firmly closed.The document feeder rubber pad may need to be replaced. Contact a service representative (see "Available maintenance parts" on page 72). |
| Faxes are not received automatically. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">The receiving mode should be set to fax (see "Changing the receive modes" on page 260).Make sure that there is paper in the tray (see "Print media specifications" on page 109).Check to see if the display shows any error message. If it does, clear the problem. |
| The machine does not send. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Make sure that the original is loaded in the document feeder or on the scanner glass.Check the fax machine you are sending to, to see if it can receive your fax. |
| The incoming fax has blank spaces or is of poor-quality. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">The fax machine sending you the fax may be faulty.A noisy phone line can cause line errors.Check your machine by making a copy.A toner cartridge has almost reached its estimated cartridge life. Replace the toner cartridge (see "Replacing the toner cartridge" on page 77). |

Faxing problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|--|---|
| Some of the words on an incoming fax are stretched. | The fax machine sending the fax had a temporary document jam. |
| There are lines on the originals you sent. | Check your scan unit for marks and clean it (see "Cleaning the scan unit" on page 85). |
| The machine dials a number, but the connection with the other fax machine fails. | The other fax machine may be turned off, out of paper, or cannot answer incoming calls. Speak with the other machine operator and ask them to solve the problem on their side. |
| Faxes do not store in memory. | There may not be enough memory space to store the fax. If the display indicating the memory status shows, delete any faxes you no longer need from the memory, and then try to store the fax again. Call for service. |
| Blank areas appear at the bottom of each page or on other pages, with a small strip of text at the top. | You may have chosen the wrong paper settings in the user option setting. Check the paper size and type again. |

Operating system problems

Common Windows problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|---|--|
| “File in Use” message appears during installation. | Exit all software applications. Remove all software from the startup group, then restart Windows. Reinstall the printer driver. |
| “General Protection Fault”, “Exception OE”, “Spool 32”, or “Illegal Operation” messages appear. | Close all other applications, reboot Windows and try printing again. |
| “Fail To Print”, “A printer timeout error occurred” message appear. | These messages may appear during printing. Just keep waiting until the machine finishes printing. If the message appears in ready mode or after printing has completed, check the connection and/or whether an error has occurred. |



Refer to the Microsoft Windows User's Guide that came with your computer for further information on Windows error messages.

Operating system problems

Common Macintosh problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|--|--|
| The machine does not print PDF files correctly. Some parts of graphics, text, or illustrations are missing. | <p>Printing the PDF file as an image may enable the file to print. Turn on Print As Image from the Acrobat printing options.</p> <p> It will take longer to print when you print a PDF file as an image.</p> |
| Some letters are not displayed normally during cover page printing. | <p>Mac OS cannot create the font while printing the cover page. The English alphabet and numbers are displayed normally on the cover page.</p> |
| When printing a document in Macintosh with Acrobat Reader 6.0 or higher, colors print incorrectly. | <p>Make sure that the resolution setting in your machine driver matches the one in Acrobat Reader.</p> |



Refer to the Macintosh User's Guide that came with your computer for further information on Macintosh error messages.

Operating system problems

Common Linux problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|--|---|
| The machine does not print. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Check if the printer driver is installed in your system. Open Unified Driver Configurator and switch to the Printers tab in the Printers configuration window to look at the list of available machines. Make sure that your machine is displayed on the list. If not, open Add new printer wizard to set up your device.Check if the machine is started. Open Printers configuration and select your machine from the printers list. Look at the description in the Selected printer pane. If its status contains Stopped, press the Start button. Normal operation of the machine should be restored. The “stopped” status might be activated when some problems in printing occur.Check if your application has special print options such as “-oraw”. If “-oraw” is specified in the command line parameter, then remove it to print properly. For Gimp front-end, select “print” -> “Setup printer” and edit the command line parameter in the command item. |
| Some color images come out all black. | <p>This is a known bug in Ghostscript (until GNU Ghostscript version 7.05) when the base color space of the document is indexed color space and it is converted through CIE color space. Because Postscript uses CIE color space for Color Matching System, you should upgrade Ghostscript on your system to at least GNU Ghostscript version 7.06 or later. You can find recent Ghostscript versions at www.ghostscript.com.</p> |
| Some color images come out in unexpected color. | <p>This is a known bug in Ghostscript (until GNU Ghostscript version 7.xx) when the base color space of the document is indexed RGB color space and it is converted through CIE color space. Because Postscript uses CIE color space for Color Matching System, you should upgrade Ghostscript on your system to at least GNU Ghostscript version 8.xx or later. You can find recent Ghostscript versions at www.ghostscript.com.</p> |
| The machine does not print whole pages, and output is printed on half the page. | <p>It is a known problem that occurs when a color machine is used on version 8.51 or earlier of Ghostscript, 64-bit Linux OS, and has been reported to bugs.ghostscript.com as Ghostscript Bug 688252. The problem is solved in AFPL Ghostscript v. 8.52 or above. Download the latest version of AFPL Ghostscript from http://sourceforge.net/projects/ghostscript/ and install it to solve this problem.</p> |

Operating system problems

| Condition | Suggested solutions |
|---|--|
| I cannot scan via Gimp Front-end. | <p>Check if Gimp Front-end has Xsane:Device dialog. on the Acquire menu. If not, you should install Xsane plug-in for Gimp on the your computer. You can find Xsane plug-in package for Gimp on Linux distribution CD or Gimp home page. For the detailed information, refer to the Help for Linux distribution CD or Gimp Front-end application.</p> <p>If you wish to use another kind of scan application, refer to application's Help.</p> |
| "Cannot open port device file" error message appears when printing a document. | <p>Avoid changing print job parameters (e.q., via LPR GUI) while a print job is in progress. Known versions of CUPS server break the print job whenever print options are changed and then try to restart the job from the beginning. Since Unified Linux Driver locks the port while printing, the abrupt termination of the driver keeps the port locked and unavailable for subsequent print jobs. If this situation occurs, try to release the port by selecting Release port in the Port configuration window.</p> |
| The machine does not appear on the scanners list. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Ensure your machine is attached to your computer, connected properly via the USB port, and is turned on.• Ensure the scanner driver for your machine is installed in your system. Open Unified Linux Driver configurator, switch to Scanners configuration, then press Drivers. Make sure that driver with a name corresponding to your machine's name is listed in the window.• Ensure the port is not busy. Since functional components of machine (printer and scanner) share the same I/O interface (port), the situation of simultaneous access of different user applications to the same port is possible. To avoid possible conflicts, only one of them at a time is allowed to gain control over the device. The other user will encounter "device busy" response. This usually happens when starting a scan procedure. An appropriate message box appears. To identify the source of the problem, open the Ports configuration and select the port assigned to your scanner, port's symbol / dev/mfp0 corresponds to LP:0 designation displayed in the scanners' options, /dev/mfp1 relates to LP:1, and so on. USB ports start at /dev/mfp4, so scanner on USB:0 relates to /dev/mfp4 respectively and so forth sequentially. In the Selected port pane, you can see if the port is occupied by another application. If this is the case, you should either wait for completion of the current job or press the Release port button, if you are sure that the present port application is not functioning properly. |
| The machine does not scan. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Ensure a document is loaded into the machine, ensure your machine is connected to the computer.• If there is an I/O error while scanning. |

Operating system problems



Refer to the Linux User's Guide that came with your computer for further information on Linux error messages.

Common PostScript problems

The following situations are PS language specific and may occur when several printer languages are used.

| Problem | Possible cause | Solution |
|--|---|--|
| The PostScript file cannot be printed | The PostScript driver may not be installed correctly. | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Install the PostScript driver (see "Software Installation" on page 133).Print a configuration page and verify that the PS version is available for printing.If the problem persists, contact a service representative. |
| Limit Check Error report prints | The print job was too complex. | You might need to reduce the complexity of the page or install more memory. |
| A PostScript error page prints | The print job may not be PostScript. | Make sure that the print job is a PostScript job. Check to see whether the software application expected a setup or PostScript header file to be sent to the machine. |
| The optional tray is not selected in the driver | The printer driver has not been configured to recognize the optional tray. | Open the PostScript driver properties, select the Device Options tab, and set the tray option. |
| When printing a document in Macintosh with Acrobat Reader 6.0 or higher, colors print incorrectly | The resolution setting in the printer driver may not be matched with the one in Acrobat Reader. | Make sure that the resolution setting in your printer driver matches the one in Acrobat Reader. |

Contact SAMSUNG worldwide

If you have any comments or questions regarding Samsung products, contact the Samsung customer care center.

| Country/Region | Customer Care Center | Web Site |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|---|
| ALBANIA | 42 27 5755 | www.samsung.com |
| ARGENTINE | 0800-333-3733 | www.samsung.com |
| ARMENIA | 0-800-05-555 | www.samsung.com |
| AUSTRALIA | 1300 362 603 | www.samsung.com |
| AUSTRIA | 0810-SAMSUNG (7267864, € 0.07/min) | www.samsung.com |
| AZERBAIJAN | 088-55-55-555 | www.samsung.com |
| BAHRAIN | 8000-4726 | www.samsung.com |
| BELARUS | 810-800-500-55-500 | www.samsung.com |
| BELGIUM | 02-201-24-18 | (Dutch) (French) |
| BOLIVIA | 800-10-7260 | www.samsung.com |
| BOSNIA | 05 133 1999 | www.samsung.com |
| BRAZIL | 0800-124-421 4004-0000 | www.samsung.com |
| BULGARIA | 07001 33 11 | www.samsung.com |

| Country/Region | Customer Care Center | Web Site |
|-----------------------|---|---|
| CAMEROON | 7095-0077 | www.samsung.com |
| CANADA | 1-800-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com/ca www.samsung.com/ca_fr (French) |
| CHILE | 800-SAMSUNG (726-7864) From mobile 02-482 82 00 | www.samsung.com |
| CHINA | 400-810-5858 | www.samsung.com |
| COLOMBIA | 01-8000112112 | www.samsung.com |
| COSTA RICA | 0-800-507-7267 | www.samsung.com |
| COTE D'IVOIRE | 8000 0077 | www.samsung.com |
| CROATIA | 062 SAMSUNG (062 726 7864) | www.samsung.com |
| CYPRUS | 8009 4000 only from landline | www.samsung.com |
| CZECH REPUBLIC | 800-SAMSUNG (800-726786) | www.samsung.com |
| | Samsung Electronics Czech and Slovak, s.r.o., Oasis Florenc, Sokolovská 394/17, 180 00, Praha 8 | |
| DENMARK | 70 70 19 70 | www.samsung.com |
| DOMINICA | 1-800-751-2676 | www.samsung.com |
| ECUADOR | 1-800-10-7267 | www.samsung.com |
| EGYPT | 08000-726786 | www.samsung.com |

Contact SAMSUNG worldwide

| Country/Region | Customer Care Center | Web Site |
|-----------------------|---|--|
| EIRE | 0818 717100 | www.samsung.com |
| EL SALVADOR | 800-6225 | www.samsung.com |
| ESTONIA | 800-7267 | www.samsung.com |
| FINLAND | 030-6227 515 | www.samsung.com |
| FRANCE | 01 48 63 00 00 | www.samsung.com |
| GERMANY | 01805 - SAMSUNG (726-7864 € 0,14/min) | www.samsung.com |
| GEORGIA | 8-800-555-555 | www.samsung.com |
| GHANA | 0800-10077 0302-200077 | www.samsung.com |
| GREECE | 80111-SAMSUNG (80111 726 7864) only from land line (+30) 210 6897691 from mobile and land line | www.samsung.com |
| GUATEMALA | 1-800-299-0013 | www.samsung.com |
| HONDURAS | 800-27919267 | www.samsung.com |
| HONG KONG | (852) 3698-4698 | www.samsung.com/hk www.samsung.com/hk_en/ |
| HUNGARY | 06-80-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com |

| Country/Region | Customer Care Center | Web Site |
|-----------------------|--|--|
| INDIA | 1800 1100 11 3030 8282 1800 3000 8282 1800 266 8282 | www.samsung.com |
| INDONESIA | 0800-112-8888 021-5699-7777 | www.samsung.com |
| IRAN | 021-8255 | www.samsung.com |
| ITALY | 800-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com |
| JAMAICA | 1-800-234-7267 | www.samsung.com |
| JAPAN | 0120-327-527 | www.samsung.com |
| JORDAN | 800-22273 | www.samsung.com |
| KAZAKHSTAN | 8-10-800-500-55-500 (GSM:7799) | www.samsung.com |
| KENYA | 0800 724 000 | www.samsung.com |
| KOSOVO | +381 0113216899 | www.samsung.com |
| KUWAIT | 183-2255 | www.samsung.com |
| KYRGYZSTAN | 00-800-500-55-500 | www.samsung.com |
| LATVIA | 8000-7267 | www.samsung.com |
| LITHUANIA | 8-800-77777 | www.samsung.com |
| LUXEMBURG | 261 03 710 | www.samsung.com |

Contact SAMSUNG worldwide

| Country/Region | Customer Care Center | Web Site |
|-----------------------|---|--|
| MALAYSIA | 1800-88-9999 | www.samsung.com |
| MACEDONIA | 023 207 777 | www.samsung.com |
| MEXICO | 01-800-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com |
| MOLDOVA | 00-800-500-55-500 | www.samsung.com |
| MONGOLIA | | www.samsung.com |
| MONTENEGRO | 020 405 888 | www.samsung.com |
| MOROCCO | 080 100 2255 | www.samsung.com |
| NIGERIA | 0800-726-7864 | www.samsung.com |
| NETHERLANDS | 0900-SAMSUNG (0900-7267864) (€ 0,10/min) | www.samsung.com |
| NEW ZEALAND | 0800 SAMSUNG (0800 726 786) | www.samsung.com |
| NICARAGUA | 00-1800-5077267 | www.samsung.com |
| NORWAY | 815-56 480 | www.samsung.com |
| OMAN | 800-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com |
| PANAMA | 800-7267 | www.samsung.com |
| PERU | 0-800-777-08 | www.samsung.com |

| Country/Region | Customer Care Center | Web Site |
|-----------------------|--|--|
| PHILIPPINES | 1-800-10-SAMSUNG(726-7864) for PLDT 1-800-3-SAMSUNG(726-7864) for Digitel 1-800-8-SAMSUNG(726-7864) for Globe 02-5805777 | www.samsung.com |
| POLAND | 0 801-1 SAMSUNG (172-678) +48 22 607-93-33 | www.samsung.com |
| PORTUGAL | 808 20-SAMSUNG (808 20 7267) | www.samsung.com |
| PUERTO RICO | 1-800-682-3180 | www.samsung.com |
| ROMANIA | 08010 SAMSUNG (08010 726 7864) only from landline (+40) 21 206 01 10 from mobile and land line | www.samsung.com |
| RUSSIA | 8-800-555-55-55 | www.samsung.com |
| SAUDI ARABIA | 9200-21230 | www.samsung.com |
| SENEGAL | 800-00-0077 | www.samsung.com |
| SERBIA | 0700 SAMSUNG (0700 726 7864) | www.samsung.com |
| SINGAPORE | 1800-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com |
| SLOVAKIA | 0800-SAMSUNG (0800-726-7864) | www.samsung.com |

Contact SAMSUNG worldwide

| Country/Region | Customer Care Center | Web Site |
|-----------------------|---|--|
| SOUTH AFRICA | 0860-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com |
| SPAIN | 902-1-SAMSUNG(902 172 678) | www.samsung.com |
| SWEDEN | 0771 726 7864 (SAMSUNG) | www.samsung.com |
| SWITZERLAND | 0848-SAMSUNG (7267864, CHF 0.08/min) | www.samsung.com/ch www.samsung.com/ch_fr(French) |
| TADJIKISTAN | 8-10-800-500-55-500 | www.samsung.com |
| TAIWAN | 0800-329-999 0266-026-066 | www.samsung.com |
| TANZANIA | 0685 88 99 00 | www.samsung.com |
| THAILAND | 1800-29-3232 02-689-3232 | www.samsung.com |
| TRINIDAD & TOBAGO | 1-800-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com |
| TURKEY | 444 77 11 | www.samsung.com |
| U.A.E | 800-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com |
| UGANDA | 0800-300 300 | www.samsung.com |
| U.K | 0330 SAMSUNG (7267864) | www.samsung.com |
| U.S.A | 1-800-SAMSUNG (726-7864) | www.samsung.com |

| Country/Region | Customer Care Center | Web Site |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| UKRAINE | 0-800-502-000 | www.samsung.com/ua www.samsung.com/ua_ru |
| UZBEKISTAN | 8-10-800-500-55-500 | www.samsung.com |
| VENEZUELA | 0-800-100-5303 | www.samsung.com |
| VIETNAM | 1 800 588 889 | www.samsung.com |

Glossary



The following glossary helps you get familiar with the product by understanding the terminologies commonly used with printing as well as mentioned in this user's guide.

802.11

802.11 is a set of standards for wireless local area network (WLAN) communication, developed by the IEEE LAN/MAN Standards Committee (IEEE 802).

802.11b/g/n

802.11b/g/n can share same hardware and use the 2.4 GHz band. 802.11b supports bandwidth up to 11 Mbps, 802.11n supports bandwidth up to 150 Mbps. 802.11b/g/n devices may occasionally suffer interference from microwave ovens, cordless telephones, and Bluetooth devices.

Access point

Access Point or Wireless Access Point (AP or WAP) is a device that connects wireless communication devices together on wireless local area networks (WLAN), and acts as a central transmitter and receiver of WLAN radio signals.

ADF

An Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) is a scanning unit that will automatically feed an original sheet of paper so that the machine can scan some amount of the paper at once.

AppleTalk

AppleTalk is a proprietary suite of protocols developed by Apple, Inc for computer networking. It was included in the original Macintosh (1984) and is now deprecated by Apple in favor of TCP/IP networking.

BIT Depth

A computer graphics term describing the number of bits used to represent the color of a single pixel in a bitmapped image. Higher color depth gives a broader range of distinct colors. As the number of bits increases, the number of possible colors becomes impractically large for a color map. 1-bit color is commonly called as monochrome or black and white.

BMP

A bitmapped graphics format used internally by the Microsoft Windows graphics subsystem (GDI), and used commonly as a simple graphics file format on that platform.

Glossary

BOOTP

Bootstrap Protocol. A network protocol used by a network client to obtain its IP address automatically. This is usually done in the bootstrap process of computers or operating systems running on them. The BOOTP servers assign the IP address from a pool of addresses to each client. BOOTP enables 'diskless workstation' computers to obtain an IP address prior to loading any advanced operating system.

CCD

Charge Coupled Device (CCD) is a hardware which enables the scan job. CCD Locking mechanism is also used to hold the CCD module to prevent any damage when you move the machine.

Collation

Collation is a process of printing a multiple-copy job in sets. When collation is selected, the device prints an entire set before printing additional copies.

Control Panel

A control panel is a flat, typically vertical, area where control or monitoring instruments are displayed. They are typically found in front of the machine.

Coverage

It is the printing term used for a toner usage measurement on printing. For example, 5% coverage means that an A4 sided paper has about 5% image or text on it. So, if the paper or original has complicated images or lots of text on it, the coverage will be higher and at the same time, a toner usage will be as much as the coverage.

CSV

Comma Separated Values (CSV). A type of file format, CSV is used to exchange data between disparate applications. The file format, as it is used in Microsoft Excel, has become a de facto standard throughout the industry, even among non-Microsoft platforms.

DADF

A Duplex Automatic Document Feeder (DADF) is a scanning unit that will automatically feed and turn over an original sheet of paper so that the machine can scan on both sides of the paper.

Default

The value or setting that is in effect when taking a printer out of its box state, reset, or initialized.

Glossary

DHCP

A Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a client-server networking protocol. A DHCP server provides configuration parameters specific to the DHCP client host requesting, generally, information required by the client host to participate on an IP network. DHCP also provides a mechanism for allocation of IP addresses to client hosts.

DIMM

Dual Inline Memory Module (DIMM), a small circuit board that holds memory. DIMM stores all the data within the machine like printing data, received fax data.

DLNA

The Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) is a standard that allows devices on a home network to share information with each other across the network.

DNS

The Domain Name Server (DNS) is a system that stores information associated with domain names in a distributed database on networks, such as the Internet.

Dot Matrix Printer

A dot matrix printer refers to a type of computer printer with a print head that runs back and forth on the page and prints by impact, striking an ink-soaked cloth ribbon against the paper, much like a typewriter.

DPI

Dots Per Inch (DPI) is a measurement of resolution that is used for scanning and printing. Generally, higher DPI results in a higher resolution, more visible detail in the image, and a larger file size.

DRPD

Distinctive Ring Pattern Detection. Distinctive Ring is a telephone company service which enables a user to use a single telephone line to answer several different telephone numbers.

Duplex

A mechanism that will automatically turn over a sheet of paper so that the machine can print (or scan) on both sides of the paper. A printer equipped with a Duplex Unit can print on both sides of paper during one print cycle.

Glossary

Duty Cycle

Duty cycle is the page quantity which does not affect printer performance for a month. Generally the printer has the lifespan limitation such as pages per year. The lifespan means the average capacity of print-outs, usually within the warranty period. For example, if the duty cycle is 48,000 pages per month assuming 20 working days, a printer limits 2,400 pages a day.

ECM

Error Correction Mode (ECM) is an optional transmission mode built into Class 1 fax machines or fax modems. It automatically detects and corrects errors in the fax transmission process that are sometimes caused by telephone line noise.

Emulation

Emulation is a technique of one machine obtaining the same results as another. An emulator duplicates the functions of one system with a different system, so that the second system behaves like the first system. Emulation focuses on exact reproduction of external behavior, which is in contrast to simulation, which concerns an abstract model of the system being simulated, often considering its internal state.

Ethernet

Ethernet is a frame-based computer networking technology for local area networks (LANs). It defines wiring and signaling for the physical layer, and frame formats and protocols for the media access control (MAC)/data link layer of the OSI model. Ethernet is mostly standardized as IEEE 802.3. It has become the most widespread LAN technology in use during the 1990s to the present.

EtherTalk

A suite of protocols developed by Apple Computer for computer networking. It was included in the original Macintosh (1984) and is now deprecated by Apple in favor of TCP/IP networking.

FDI

Foreign Device Interface (FDI) is a card installed inside the machine to allow a third party device such as a coin operated device or a card reader. Those devices allow the pay-for-print service on your machine.

FTP

A File Transfer Protocol (FTP) is a commonly used protocol for exchanging files over any network that supports the TCP/IP protocol (such as the Internet or an intranet).

Glossary

Fuser Unit

The part of a laser printer that fuses the toner onto the print media. It consists of a heat roller and a pressure roller. After toner is transferred onto the paper, the fuser unit applies heat and pressure to ensure that the toner stays on the paper permanently, which is why paper is warm when it comes out of a laser printer.

Gateway

A connection between computer networks, or between a computer network and a telephone line. It is very popular, as it is a computer or a network that allows access to another computer or network.

Grayscale

A shades of gray that represent light and dark portions of an image when color images are converted to grayscale; colors are represented by various shades of gray.

Halftone

An image type that simulates grayscale by varying the number of dots. Highly colored areas consist of a large number of dots, while lighter areas consist of a smaller number of dots.

Mass storage device (HDD)

Mass storage device (HDD), commonly referred to as a hard drive or hard disk, is a non-volatile storage device which stores digitally-encoded data on rapidly rotating platters with magnetic surfaces.

IEEE

The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) is an international non-profit, professional organization for the advancement of technology related to electricity.

IEEE 1284

The 1284 parallel port standard was developed by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE). The term "1284-B" refers to a specific connector type on the end of the parallel cable that attaches to the peripheral (for example, a printer).

Intranet

A private network that uses Internet Protocols, network connectivity, and possibly the public telecommunication system to securely share part of an organization's information or operations with its employees. Sometimes the term refers only to the most visible service, the internal website.

Glossary

IP address

An Internet Protocol (IP) address is a unique number that devices use in order to identify and communicate with each other on a network utilizing the Internet Protocol standard.

IPM

The Images Per Minute (IPM) is a way of measuring the speed of a printer. An IPM rate indicates the number of single-sided sheets a printer can complete within one minute.

IPP

The Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) defines a standard protocol for printing as well as managing print jobs, media size, resolution, and so forth. IPP can be used locally or over the Internet to hundreds of printers, and also supports access control, authentication, and encryption, making it a much more capable and secure printing solution than older ones.

IPX/SPX

IPX/SPX stands for Internet Packet Exchange/Sequenced Packet Exchange. It is a networking protocol used by the Novell NetWare operating systems. IPX and SPX both provide connection services similar to TCP/IP, with the IPX protocol having similarities to IP, and SPX having similarities to TCP. IPX/SPX was primarily designed for local area networks (LANs), and is a very efficient protocol for this purpose (typically its performance exceeds that of TCP/IP on a LAN).

ISO

The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) is an international standard-setting body composed of representatives from national standards bodies. It produces world-wide industrial and commercial standards.

ITU-T

The International Telecommunication Union is an international organization established to standardize and regulate international radio and telecommunications. Its main tasks include standardization, allocation of the radio spectrum, and organizing interconnection arrangements between different countries to allow international phone calls. A -T out of ITU-T indicates telecommunication.

Glossary

ITU-T No. 1 chart

Standardized test chart published by ITU-T for document facsimile transmissions.

JBIG

Joint Bi-level Image Experts Group (JBIG) is an image compression standard with no loss of accuracy or quality, which was designed for compression of binary images, particularly for faxes, but can also be used on other images.

JPEG

Joint Photographic Experts Group (JPEG) is a most commonly used standard method of lossy compression for photographic images. It is the format used for storing and transmitting photographs on the World Wide Web.

LDAP

The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a networking protocol for querying and modifying directory services running over TCP/IP.

LED

A Light-Emitting Diode (LED) is a semiconductor device that indicates the status of a machine.

MAC address

Media Access Control (MAC) address is a unique identifier associated with a network adapter. MAC address is a unique 48-bit identifier usually written as 12 hexadecimal characters grouped in pairs (e.g., 00-00-0c-34-11-4e). This address is usually hard-coded into a Network Interface Card (NIC) by its manufacturer, and used as an aid for routers trying to locate machines on large networks.

MFP

Multi Function Peripheral (MFP) is an office machine that includes the following functionality in one physical body, so as to have a printer, a copier, a fax, a scanner and etc.

Glossary

MH

Modified Huffman (MH) is a compression method for decreasing the amount of data that needs to be transmitted between the fax machines to transfer the image recommended by ITU-T T.4. MH is a codebook-based run-length encoding scheme optimized to efficiently compress white space. As most faxes consist mostly of white space, this minimizes the transmission time of most faxes.

MMR

Modified Modified READ (MMR) is a compression method recommended by ITU-T T.6.

Modem

A device that modulates a carrier signal to encode digital information, and also demodulates such a carrier signal to decode transmitted information.

MR

Modified Read (MR) is a compression method recommended by ITU-T T.4. MR encodes the first scanned line using MH. The next line is compared to the first, the differences determined, and then the differences are encoded and transmitted.

NetWare

A network operating system developed by Novell, Inc. It initially used cooperative multitasking to run various services on a PC, and the network protocols were based on the archetypal Xerox XNS stack. Today NetWare supports TCP/IP as well as IPX/SPX.

OPC

Organic Photo Conductor (OPC) is a mechanism that makes a virtual image for print using a laser beam emitted from a laser printer, and it is usually green or rust colored and has a cylinder shape.

An imaging unit containing a drum slowly wears the drum surface by its usage in the printer, and it should be replaced appropriately since it gets worn from contact with the cartridge development brush, cleaning mechanism, and paper.

Originals

The first example of something, such as a document, photograph or text, etc, which is copied, reproduced or translated to produce others, but which is not itself copied or derived from something else.

Glossary

OSI

Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) is a model developed by the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) for communications. OSI offers a standard, modular approach to network design that divides the required set of complex functions into manageable, self-contained, functional layers. The layers are, from top to bottom, Application, Presentation, Session, Transport, Network, Data Link and Physical.

PABX

A private automatic branch exchange (PABX) is an automatic telephone switching system within a private enterprise.

PCL

Printer Command Language (PCL) is a Page Description Language (PDL) developed by HP as a printer protocol and has become an industry standard. Originally developed for early inkjet printers, PCL has been released in varying levels for thermal, dot matrix printer, and laser printers.

PDF

Portable Document Format (PDF) is a proprietary file format developed by Adobe Systems for representing two dimensional documents in a device independent and resolution independent format.

PostScript

PostScript (PS) is a page description language and programming language used primarily in the electronic and desktop publishing areas. - that is run in an interpreter to generate an image.

Printer Driver

A program used to send commands and transfer data from the computer to the printer.

Print Media

The media like paper, envelopes, labels, and transparencies which can be used in a printer, a scanner, a fax or, a copier.

PPM

Pages Per Minute (PPM) is a method of measurement for determining how fast a printer works, meaning the number of pages a printer can produce in one minute.

Glossary

PRN file

An interface for a device driver, this allows software to interact with the device driver using standard input/output system calls, which simplifies many tasks.

Protocol

A convention or standard that controls or enables the connection, communication, and data transfer between two computing endpoints.

PS

See PostScript.

PSTN

The Public-Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) is the network of the world's public circuit-switched telephone networks which, on industrial premises, is usually routed through the switchboard.

RADIUS

Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) is a protocol for remote user authentication and accounting. RADIUS enables centralized management of authentication data such as usernames and passwords using an AAA (authentication, authorization, and accounting) concept to manage network access.

Resolution

The sharpness of an image, measured in Dots Per Inch (DPI). The higher the dpi, the greater the resolution.

SMB

Server Message Block (SMB) is a network protocol mainly applied to share files, printers, serial ports, and miscellaneous communications between nodes on a network. It also provides an authenticated Inter-process communication mechanism.

Glossary

SMTP

Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) is the standard for e-mail transmissions across the Internet. SMTP is a relatively simple, text-based protocol, where one or more recipients of a message are specified, and then the message text is transferred. It is a client-server protocol, where the client transmits an email message to the server.

SSID

Service Set Identifier (SSID) is a name of a wireless local area network (WLAN). All wireless devices in a WLAN use the same SSID in order to communicate with each other. The SSIDs are case-sensitive and have a maximum length of 32 characters.

Subnet Mask

The subnet mask is used in conjunction with the network address to determine which part of the address is the network address and which part is the host address.

TCP/IP

The Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) and the Internet Protocol (IP); the set of communications protocols that implement the protocol stack on which the Internet and most commercial networks run.

TCR

Transmission Confirmation Report (TCR) provides details of each transmission such as job status, transmission result and number of pages sent. This report can be set to print after each job or only after failed transmissions.

TIFF

Tagged Image File Format (TIFF) is a variable-resolution bitmapped image format. TIFF describes image data that typically come from scanners. TIFF images make use of tags, keywords defining the characteristics of the image that is included in the file. This flexible and platform-independent format can be used for pictures that have been made by various image processing applications.

Toner Cartridge

A kind of bottle or container used in a machine like a printer which contains toner. Toner is a powder used in laser printers and photocopiers, which forms the text and images on the printed paper. Toner can be fused by a combination of heat/pressure from the fuser, causing it to bind to the fibers in the paper.

Glossary

TWAIN

An industry standard for scanners and software. By using a TWAIN-compliant scanner with a TWAIN-compliant program, a scan can be initiated from within the program. It is an image capture API for Microsoft Windows and Apple Macintosh operating systems.

UNC Path

Uniform Naming Convention (UNC) is a standard way to access network shares in Window NT and other Microsoft products. The format of a UNC path is:
\\<servername>\<sharename>\<Additional directory>

URL

Uniform Resource Locator (URL) is the global address of documents and resources on the Internet. The first part of the address indicates what protocol to use, the second part specifies the IP address or the domain name where the resource is located.

USB

Universal Serial Bus (USB) is a standard that was developed by the USB Implementers Forum, Inc., to connect computers and peripherals. Unlike the parallel port, USB is designed to concurrently connect a single computer USB port to multiple peripherals.

Watermark

A watermark is a recognizable image or pattern in paper that appears lighter when viewed by transmitted light. Watermarks were first introduced in Bologna, Italy in 1282; they have been used by papermakers to identify their product, and also on postage stamps, currency, and other government documents to discourage counterfeiting.

WEP

Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) is a security protocol specified in IEEE 802.11 to provide the same level of security as that of a wired LAN. WEP provides security by encrypting data over radio so that it is protected as it is transmitted from one end point to another.

WIA

Windows Imaging Architecture (WIA) is an imaging architecture that is originally introduced in Windows Me and Windows XP. A scan can be initiated from within these operating systems by using a WIA-compliant scanner.

WPA

Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) is a class of systems to secure wireless (Wi-Fi) computer networks, which was created to improve upon the security features of WEP.

Glossary

WPA-PSK

WPA-PSK (WPA Pre-Shared Key) is special mode of WPA for small business or home users. A shared key, or password, is configured in the wireless access point (WAP) and any wireless laptop or desktop devices. WPA-PSK generates a unique key for each session between a wireless client and the associated WAP for more advanced security.

WPS

The Wi-Fi Protected Setup (WPS) is a standard for establishing a wireless home network. If your wireless access point supports WPS, you can configure the wireless network connection easily without a computer.

XPS

XML Paper Specification (XPS) is a specification for a Page Description Language (PDL) and a new document format, which has benefits for portable document and electronic document, developed by Microsoft. It is an XML-based specification, based on a new print path and a vector-based device-independent document format.

Index

A

address book

- editing 224
- general setup 215
- group editing 225
- group registering 225
- registering 224
- using 224

address book setup

administrator's setup

AnyWeb Print

authorized users

- registering 227

B

buttons

- eco 24, 26
- id copy 25, 26
- numeric keypad 27
- print screen 24
- scan to 24
- wps 24, 26

C

cleaning

- inside 82
- outside 81
- pickup roller 84
- scan unit 85
- cleaning a machine 81
- control panel 24
- convention 14
- copy
 - general setup 192
- copying
 - basic copying 59
 - reducing or enlarging copies 61
- custom setup 218

D

default settings

- tray setting 48
- direct printing utility 236
- document box 215
- general setup 215
- driver installation

Unix

E

- eco printing 57
- email
 - general setup 214
- email address 221
- searching 222
- storing 221
- emulation
 - general setup 214
- emulation setup 214
- entering character 223
- error message 101

F

- favorites settings, for printing 56
- fax
 - adding documents to a reserved fax 256
 - automatic redialing 254
 - canceling a reserved fax job 257
 - changing the receive modes 260
 - delaying a fax transmission 256
 - forwarding a received fax to another

Index

Index

| | | | | | |
|---|----------|--------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|----------|
| common Macintosh problems | 306 | Macintosh | 147 | adjusting the altitude | 220 |
| driver installation for network connected | 147 | UNIX | 150 | postScript driver | |
| driver installation for USB cable connected | 134 | Windows | 144 | troubleshooting | 309 |
| driver reinstallation for USB cable connected | 135 | general setup | 215, 216 | preparing originals type | 49 |
| printing | 237 | installing environment | 115 | print | |
| scanning | 250 | introducing network programs | 140 | general setup | 191 |
| system requirements | 113 | IPv6 configuration | 153 | mobile OS | 188 |
| using SetIP | 142 | SetIP program | 141, 142, 143, 181 | mobileprint | 188 |
| macintosh scanning | 250 | wired network setup | 141 | print media | |
| maintenance parts | 72 | wireless network setup | 156 | card stock | 47 |
| manual feeding | | n-up printing | | envelope | 45 |
| loading | 44 | Macintosh | 237 | labels | 46 |
| memory/hard drive feature | 265, 266 | O | | output support | 109 |
| menu overview | 33 | optional memory | | preprinted paper | 47 |
| multi-purpose tray | | setting up the optional memory | 266 | setting the paper size | 48 |
| tips on using | 44 | output support | 49 | setting the paper type | 48 |
| using special media | 44 | overlay printing | | special media | 44 |
| N | | create | 234 | print menu | 191 |
| network | | delete | 234 | print resolution set | |
| driver installation | | print | 234 | Linux | 239 |
| Linux | 149 | P | | printer preferences | |
| Linux | | placing a machine | | Linux | 240 |
| | | | | printer status | |
| | | | | general information | 277, 279 |

Index

| | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----|---------------------------|---------------------|---|----------|
| printing | | faxing problems | 303 | scan feature | 243 |
| changing the default print settings | 228 | paper feeding problems | 286 | Scanning | |
| Linux | 238 | power problems | 287 | Scanning with Samsung Scan Assistant | 248 |
| Macintosh | 237 | printing problems | 288 | Scanning with SmarThru 4 | 249 |
| multiple pages on one sheet of paper | | printing quality problems | 292 | scanning | |
| Macintosh | 237 | scanning problems | 301 | basic information | 243 |
| printing a document | | R | | Linux scanning | 251 |
| Windows | 53 | rear view | 23 | Macintosh scanning | 250 |
| printing on both sides of paper | | regulatory information | 116 | Scanning from image editing program | 247 |
| Macintosh | 238 | reports | | Scanning from network connected machine | 244 |
| printing to a file | 229 | machine information | 192, 199, 200, 201, | Scanning to email | 245 |
| setting as a default machine | 228 | 204, | 205, 206, 209, 210 | Scanning to FTP/SMB server | 246 |
| special printer features | 230 | resolution | | Scanning using the WIA driver | 248 |
| UNIX | 240 | faxing | 68 | Scanning with SmarThru Office | 249 |
| using direct printing utility | 236 | S | | service contact numbers | 310 |
| printing a document | | safety | | SetIP program | 141, 181 |
| Linux | 238 | information | 15 | SmarThru 4 | 249 |
| Macintosh | 237 | symbols | 15 | SmarThru Office | 249 |
| UNIX | 240 | Samsung Printer Status | 277 | Special features | 219 |
| printing feature | 228 | scan | | specifications | 107 |
| problem | | general setup | 203 | print media | 109 |
| operating system problems | 305 | Scan Assistant | 248 | status | 25, 27 |
| problems | | | | Storing | 221 |
| copying problems | 300 | | | | |

Index

| | | | |
|---------------------------------|-----|--|---|
| supplies | | U | driver installation for USB cable connected 30, 31 |
| available supplies | 71 | understanding the status LED | 99 |
| estimated toner cartridge life | 74 | | system requirements 112 |
| monitoring the supplies life | 79 | UNIX | using SetIP 141, 181 |
| ordering | 71 | driver installation for network connected 150 | |
| replacing toner cartridge | 77 | printing | 240 |
| SyncThru Web Service | | Unix | |
| general information | 271 | system requirements | 114 |
| SyncThru™ Web Service | 271 | usb | 213 |
| T | | general setupusb | 213 |
| toner cartridge | | USB cable | |
| estimated life | 74 | driver installation | 30, 31, 134, 136 |
| handling instructions | 73 | driver reinstallation | 135, 138 |
| non-Samsung and refilled | 73 | using help | 56, 238 |
| redistributing toner | 75 | | |
| replacing the cartridge | 77 | W | |
| storing | 73 | watermark | |
| tray | | create | 233 |
| adjusting the width and length | 41 | delete | 233 |
| changing the tray size | 41 | edit | 233 |
| manual feeding | 44 | Windows | |
| setting the paper size and type | 48 | common Windows problems | 305 |
| | | driver installation for network connected 144 | |